

# LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE

---

## PART III ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE



SPRAGGE



Bethiana Academy.

No. 1. 1811.

Bethiana Academy.

No. 2. 1812.









*Longmans, Green & Co.  
London & New York*

LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE

## LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE.

With copious Exercises and Vocabularies.

PART I. Up to and including the Regular Verb, Active and Passive. 1s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Masters only, 3s. 8½d. net.

PART II. Including Pronouns, Numeral Adjectives, Irregular Verbs, Accusative and Infinitive, Ablative Absolute, Dependent Questions, Dependent Clauses, the Use of the Cases and Oratio Obliqua. 2s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Masters only, 5s. 3d. net.

PARTS I. and II. complete in one volume. 3s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Masters only, 7s. 9½d. net.

PART III. Elementary Latin Prose, with Complete Syntax and Passages for learning by heart. By W. HORTON SPRAGGE, M.A., late Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at the City of London School. 3s.

A KEY, for the use of Masters only, 3s. 9d. net.

## ELEMENTARY UNSEENS.

With Notes and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Masters only, 4s. 8½d. net.

## A JUNIOR LATIN READER.

Compiled by P. M. DRUCE, M.A., late Scholar, Emmanuel College, Cambridge, and M. D. MANDUELL, M.A., late Scholar, Jesus College, Cambridge. With 38 Maps and Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 2s.

\* \* THE KEYS can only be obtained from the Publishers direct.

---

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

LONDON, NEW YORK, BOMBAY, CALCUTTA, AND MADRAS.



# LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE

## PART III. ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE

*WITH COMPLETE SYNTAX AND PASSAGES  
FOR LEARNING BY HEART*

BY  
W. HORTON SPRAGGE, M.A.  
LATE SCHOLAR, ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE  
ASSISTANT MASTER AT THE CITY OF LONDON SCHOOL



*NEW IMPRESSION*

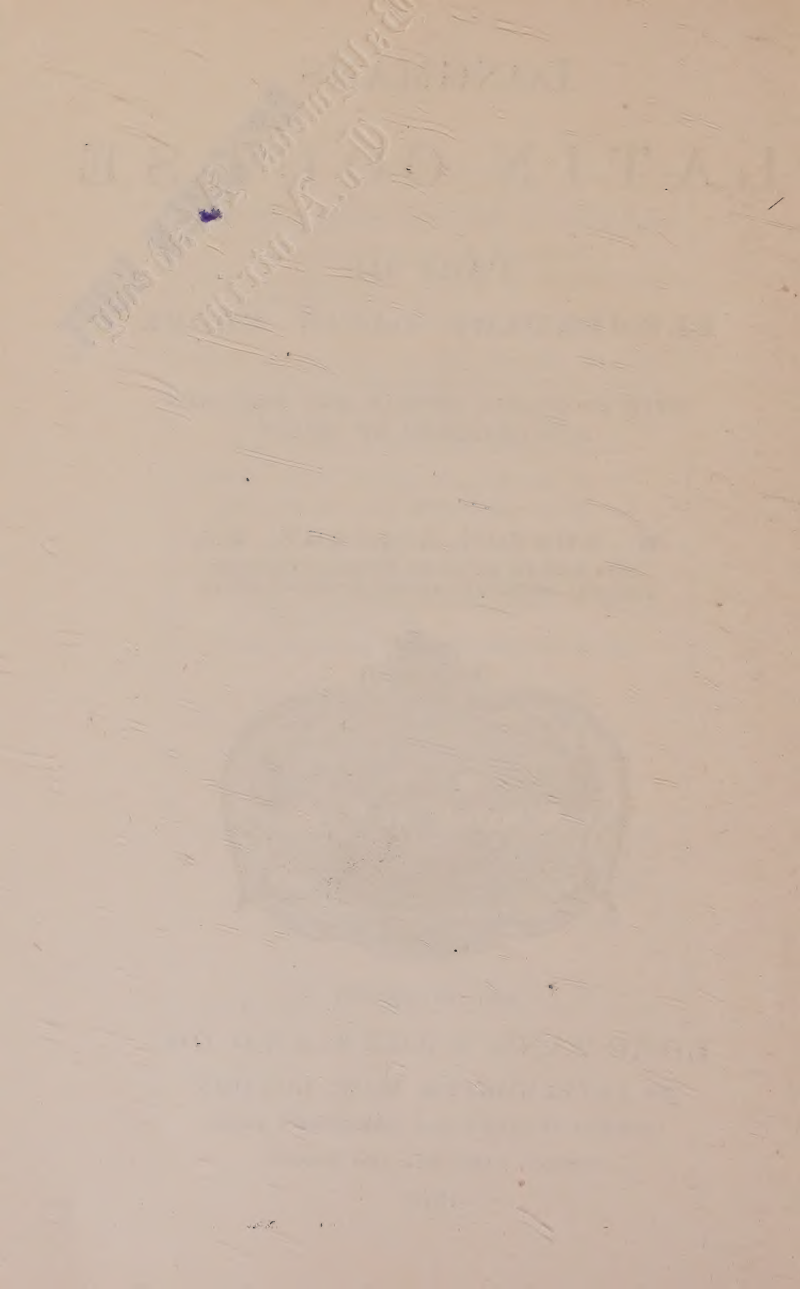
LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

FOURTH AVENUE & 30TH STREET, NEW YORK

BOMBAY, CALCUTTA, AND MADRAS

1916



## PREFACE.

THE Third Part of this Course is intended to be a stepping-stone to the writing of Continuous Latin Prose. Before commencing it, the student should have had some practice in turning easy sentences into Latin, and should have a fair knowledge of Accidence. The chief points of Latin construction have been carefully explained with examples which, with occasional modification for the sake of brevity, have been taken from the Latin authors generally read. In the detached sentences given for translation, some of which have been selected from those set in the Matriculation Examination of London University, the English mode of expression has been purposely followed rather than the Latin. The beginner may know his Latin constructions, but the difference of idiom between the two languages makes it hard for him, without training, to utilise his knowledge. The literal translations given of the examples, and the references and hints in the foot-notes to the Exercises should obviate any difficulty. No special recapitulatory sentences were thought necessary, as the points previously explained are constantly reproduced in succeeding exercises. The short continuous pieces will also serve that purpose. The specimens of Latin prose given to be learnt by heart may also be useful for practice in the translation of

detached pieces. It is hoped that the Latin proverbs which have been inserted with their English equivalents will add to the interest of the book.

In using the Vocabularies it should be noted that they only give the equivalents for the Latin or English words in the sense in which they are employed in this book.

Words in parentheses ( ) are generally explanatory.

Words in the Exercises that are enclosed in square brackets [ ] are to be omitted in translation.



# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION—The Analysis of Latin Sentences:—	
I. The Simple Sentence . . . . .	1
II. The Compound Sentence . . . . .	3
III. The Complex Sentence . . . . .	3
 CHAP.	
I. Accusative and Infinitive . . . . .	6
II. Accusative Case . . . . .	9
III. Accusative and Infinitive— <i>Continued</i> . . . . .	13
IV. Other Uses of the Infinitive . . . . .	16
V. Dative Case . . . . .	19
VI. Impersonals . . . . .	22
VII. Dative Case. Apposition . . . . .	26
VIII. Participles . . . . .	28
IX. Ablative Absolute . . . . .	33
X. Final Subjunctive . . . . .	36
XI. Final Subjunctive. Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	39
XII. Adjectives . . . . .	42
XIII. Consecutive Clauses . . . . .	47
XIV. Consecutive Clauses. <b>Quin and Quominus</b> . . . . .	50
XV. Relative Pronouns . . . . .	54
XVI. Correlatives . . . . .	58
XVII. Direct Questions . . . . .	62
XVIII. Indirect Simple Questions . . . . .	66

CHAP.	PAGE
XIX. Indirect Questions— <i>Continued</i>	69
XX. Genitive	73
XXI. Genitive— <i>Continued</i>	77
XXII. Direct Commands and Wishes	81
XXIII. Indirect Commands and Wishes	84
XXIV. Supines. Certain Uses of Tenses	87
XXV. The Ablative	91
XXVI. The Ablative— <i>Continued</i>	94
XXVII. Time and Space	97
XXVIII. Place	100
XXIX. Obligation and Necessity	104
XXX. Gerund and Gerundive	107
XXXI. Personal and Demonstrative Pronouns	112
XXXII. <b>Se, suus, ipse, quisque</b>	115
XXXIII. <b>Quisquam, quis, quivis, aliquis, nescio quis, quispiam, quidam</b>	120
XXXIV. <b>Nemo, nullus, uter, uterque, idem, ceteri, reliqui</b>	122
XXXV. Temporal Clauses. <b>Ubi, postquam, cum</b>	127
XXXVI. Temporal Clauses. <b>Dum, priusquam</b>	131
XXXVII. Concessive Clauses. <b>Quamquam, quamvis</b>	135
XXXVIII. Numerals	138
XXXIX. The Date in Latin	142
XL. Causal Sentences. <b>Quod</b> substantival	145
XLI. Conditional Clauses	149
XLII. Conditionals in Indirect Statement. <b>Quodsi, sin, si minus</b>	152
XLIII. Variations in Conditionals. Potential Subjunctive	156
XLIV. Comparison and Comparative Clauses	159
XLV. Comparative Clauses— <i>Continued</i>	162
XLVI. Translation of English Verbal Noun	165
XLVII. Oratio Obliqua	168

CHAP.	PAGE
XLVIII. Oratio Obliqua— <i>Continued</i> . . . .	172
XLIX. Money and Interest . . . .	175
L. Oratio Obliqua— <i>Continued</i> . . . .	178
APPENDIX I. Prepositions . . . .	181
II. Order of Words and Clauses . . . .	184
VOCABULARIES I. Latin-English . . . .	189
II. English-Latin . . . .	197
INDEX . . . . .	223





## INTRODUCTION.

### THE ANALYSIS OF LATIN SENTENCES.

#### I. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

A **SIMPLE sentence** is one which contains no subordinate clause. Logically it consists of two parts—a **subject** and a **predicate**.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Puer	currit.
The boy	runs.
Vir fortis	pueros vehementer culpat.
The brave man	blames the boys severely.

Grammatically both of these parts are subdivided. The verb alone is regarded as predicate, except in the case of **verbs of incomplete predication**, which cannot make an assertion without the help of some other word. Thus in the sentence *Puer est bonus*, the predicate is **est bonus**.

Grammatically the sentence may contain these parts—**Subject, Enlargement of Subject, Predicate, Extension of Predicate, Object, Enlargement of Object**.

In a simple sentence the subject or object is a **noun, pronoun, or noun phrase**. (A phrase is a group of words which takes the place of some part of speech, but does not include a finite verb.) The enlargement of these is an **adjective, a noun in apposition, a noun used possessively, or an adjective phrase**. The predicate is a verb or **verb with its complement**. The extension of the predicate is an **adverb, noun used adverbially, or adverb phrase**.

- (a) Vir fortis pueros timidos vehementer culpat.

Vir	Subject.
fortis	Enlargement of subject.
culpat	Predicate.
vehementer	Extension of predicate.
pueros	Object.
timidos	Enlargement of object.

- (b) Haec didicisse mentem exercebit.

To have learnt this will train the mind.

Haec didicisse	Subject (a <b>noun phrase</b> ).
exercebit	Predicate.
mentem	Object.

- (c) Dicit se haec intellexisse.

He says that he has understood this.

Pronoun implied in verb	Subject.
dicit	Predicate.
se haec intellexisse	Object (a <b>noun phrase</b> ).

- (d) Classis decem navium capta est.

A fleet of ten vessels has been captured.

Classis	Subject.
decem navium	Enlargement of subject (an <b>adjective phrase</b> ).
capta est	Predicate.

- (e) Caesar castris incensis copias suas in proximum collem subducit.

Caesar having burnt the camp withdraws his forces to the nearest hill.

Caesar	Subject.
subducit	Predicate.
castris incensis	Extension of predicate ( <b>adverb phrase</b> denoting accompanying circumstance).
in proximum collem	Extension of predicate ( <b>adverb phrase</b> denoting place whither).
copias	Object.
suas	Enlargement of object.

## II. THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

A **compound sentence** consists of two (or more) **independent** sentences united by a conjunction. Such conjunctions are called **co-ordinating**.

Et absentes adsunt et imbecilli valent.

Both the absent are present and the weak are strong.

## III. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

A **complex sentence** consists of a **principal sentence** and one or more **subordinate clauses**.

A subordinate clause always has a finite verb as predicate, and takes the place of some part of speech. There are three kinds of subordinate clauses—**Noun** clauses (also called **substantival**), **Adjective** clauses and **Adverb** clauses.

(a) Id aliquot de causis acciderat ut subito Galli consilium mutarent.

From several causes it had happened that the Gauls suddenly changed their plan.

Ut subito Galli consilium mutarent  
Subject (a **noun** clause).

acciderat

Predicate.

aliquot de causis

Extension of predicate (an **adverb phrase**).

*Analysis of Subordinate Clause.*

Galli	Subject.
mutarent	Predicate.
subito	Extension of predicate.
consilium	Object.

(b) *Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.*

*Considius*, who was considered to be very experienced in warfare, is sent on in advance with the scouts.

<i>Considius</i>	Subject.
<i>qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur</i>	Enlargement of subject (an <b>adjective clause</b> ).
<i>praemittitur</i>	Predicate.
<i>cum exploratoribus</i>	Extension of predicate.

Subordinate clause :—

<i>qui</i>	Subject.
<i>rei militaris peritissimus habebatur</i>	Predicate.

(c) *Quoniam de genere belli dixi, nunc de magnitudine pauca dicam.*

Since I have spoken about the character of the war, I will now say a few words about its extent.

<i>Pronoun implied in verb</i>	Subject.
<i>dicam</i>	Predicate.
<i>nunc</i>	Extension of predicate.
<i>de magnitudine</i>	Extension of predicate.
<i>quoniam de genere belli dixi</i>	Extension of predicate (an <b>ad-verb clause</b> ).
<i>pauca</i>	Object.

The analysis of the subordinate clause is similar.

**Noun clauses** may be :—

1. An **indirect question** (128).

*Rogo quid facias.* (*Quid facias* is the object of *rogo*.)

I ask what you are doing.

2. An **indirect command** (167).

*Rogo ut venias.* (*Ut venias* is the object of *rogo*.)

I ask you to come.



3. **Certain ut-clauses** (91, 92).

Fieri potest ut tu recte sentias. (Ut tu recte sentias is the subject of potest.)

It is possible that you think rightly.

**Adjective clauses define or qualify** some noun or pronoun, and are introduced by the relative qui.

Ego Maximum eum qui Tarentum recepit semper dilexi.

I have always loved Maximus, the man who recovered Tarentum.

**Adverb clauses may be :—**

1. **Final**, denoting purpose.

Venio ut Caesarem laudem.

I come to praise Caesar.

2. **Consecutive**, denoting result.

Ita sum perturbatus ut omnia timerem.

I was so confused that I feared everything.

3. **Temporal**, denoting time.

Dum imperare discimus, melioribus pareamus.

While we are learning to command, let us obey our superiors.

4. **Concessive**, denoting opposition.

Quamquam molestum est, opus conficiam.

Though it is troublesome, I will finish the work.

5. **Causal**, denoting reason.

Quod tacetis irascuntur.

They are becoming angry because you are silent.

6. **Conditional**, denoting supposition.

Si hoc negem, certe mentiar.

If I were to deny this, I should certainly be lying.

7. **Comparative**, denoting comparison.

Ita dicam ut sentio.

I will speak as I think.

## CHAPTER I.

### ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

#### INDIRECT STATEMENT.

1. If such a sentence as *the general said that the city had been captured* is analysed, it will be found that the object governed by the principal verb *said* is the clause introduced by the conjunction *that*. This clause does not give the actual words directly used by the general, which would have been *the city has been captured*, but only the substance of them; and so his words are said to be reported indirectly. In order to represent such an **indirect statement** in Latin it is necessary to employ a different mode of expression; no conjunction is required after the principal verb, the verb in the subordinate clause is put in the **infinitive** mood, and has as its subject a noun (or pronoun) in the **accusative** case.

The general said **that the city**      Dixit imperator urbem expugnatam esse.  
**had been captured.**

OBS.—This subject of the infinitive must always be expressed, except (1) with the latter of two co-ordinate infinitives which have the same subject, and (2) when the infinitive is used impersonally.

2. This construction, which is very frequent after verbs expressing the idea “say,” is also found with many other verbs that require some fact as their natural object, which, as with the verb “say,” is denoted in our language by a noun clause beginning with *that*. Such verbs are those of **thinking, knowing, feeling, understanding, believing**, and the like.

- (a) Caesar understood that our soldiers were not inferior. Caesar intellexit nostros non esse inferiores.
- (b) They say that truth always prevails. Vēritatem semper valēre aiunt.<sup>1</sup>
- (c) I feel that friendship, except in the case of the good, is impossible. Sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam esse<sup>2</sup> non posse.
- (d) Coriolanus, we believe, has borne arms against his country. Credimus Cōriōlānum contra patriam armatusse.
- (e) He replied that Brutus had delivered the state from the tyranny of kings. Brutum dominatu regio civitatem liberavisse respondit.

3. In example (d) the statement *Coriolanus has borne arms against his country* is put directly, and the words *we believe* are inserted as a parenthesis. This is an alternative in English for the more formal *We believe that Coriolanus*, etc. In Latin prose as a rule<sup>3</sup> only the verb **inquam** is so employed. With other verbs the dependent accusative and infinitive must be employed.

The path to fame, he **answered**, is always open to you (= he answered that the path to fame was always open to you).

*but*

The path to fame, **says he**, is always open to you. Tibi, **inquit**, aditus laudis semper patet.

Obs.—**Inquam**, when so used, must not head the sentence. It is inserted as an explanatory parenthesis **after** the **first** or **second** word of the quoted remark or speech.

<sup>1</sup> **Aiunt** is frequently used in stating proverbs or proverbial phrases.

<sup>2</sup> Note that **esse** must be inserted. **Posse** does **not** mean *to be possible*.

<sup>3</sup> **Mihi crede** (*believe me*) and **crede** are found sometimes in parenthesis.

4. The tense in which the infinitive must be depends on its relation in point of time to the principal verb.

The <b>present</b> infinitive is used to denote the <b>same time as</b>	} that which is denoted by the <b>principal verb</b> on which it depends.
The <b>past</b> infinitive is used to denote the <b>time before</b>	
The <b>future</b> infinitive is used to denote the <b>time after</b>	

(a) He **says** that he **is doing** this. Se hoc **facere** dicit.

The "*doing*" and the "*saying*" take place at the same time.

(b) He **said** that he **was doing** this. Se hoc **facere** dixit.

Here again the two actions are simultaneous. So the present infinitive is used in Latin, although in English the tense of "*was doing*" is past.

(c) He **says** that he **has done** this. Se hoc **fecisse** dicit.

(d) He **said** that he **had done** this. Se hoc **fecisse** dixit.

Both in (c) and (d) the "*doing*" takes place before the "*saying*".

(e) He **says** that he **will do** this. Se hoc **facturum esse** dicit.

(f) He **said** that he **would do** this. Se hoc **facturum esse** dixit.

In (e) and (f) the "*doing*" will take place after the "*saying*".

(g) He **said** that he **would have done** this. Se hoc **facturum fuisse** dixit (323, c).

5. The word **se** is used to translate *he, she, they*, in the object clause when these pronouns refer to the **subject** of the **principal verb**. When they do not, **eum, eam, eos, eas, or illum, etc.**, must be used according to the context.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur.

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

Corrumpunt mores bonos collōquia prava.

Evil communications corrupt good manners.

## EXERCISE 1.

- ✓ 1. I perceive, judges, that you have been deeply moved by these crimes.
- ✓ 2. We think that they will deliver the state from great danger.
- ✓ 3. Almost all the Gauls, he believed, were anxious for a revolution.
- ✓ 4. Our ancestors used-to-boast that they had carried on war successfully against the Carthaginians.
- ✓ 5. You told us that you were devoted to these pursuits.
- ✓ 6. Catiline asserted that he would willingly have set fire to a city so wealthy and flourishing.
- ✓ 7. My father never forgot that the laws were the bulwarks of the state.
- ✓ 8. The consul, who had noticed the dismay<sup>1</sup> of the senate, replied that there was no need for discussion.
9. Remember, fellow-citizens, that not only your revenues but also your lives are at stake.
10. In my boyhood<sup>2</sup> I frequently used to hear that Italy had been saved by the valour of our ancestors.
11. We are carrying on war, says<sup>3</sup> he, on our own soil. Rome is fighting for life itself. How long, pray, will you sit inactive? We all know that the number of our foes is daily increasing; we all see that a crisis is imminent; yet we do nothing.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

6. Certain verbs of asking, as *rõgo*, *interrogo*; of demanding, as *posco*, *flāgīto*, *ōro*; of teaching, as *dōceo*, can have two direct objects, one being a person, the other a thing. The verb *cēlo*, I conceal, is used similarly.

---

<sup>1</sup> = that the senate was dismayed.

<sup>2</sup> = I, a boy, frequently, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Use *inquit*.

- (a) The tribune asked me my opinion.      **Tribunus me sententiam rogavit.<sup>1</sup>**
- (b) In the meanwhile Caesar kept demanding corn from the Aedui.      **Interim Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitabat.**
- (c) He taught boys the alphabet.      **Elementa pueros docebat.**
- (d) I have concealed that from you.      **Id vos celavi.**

Obs.—After **posco** and **flagito** the person may also be put in the **ablative** with **ab**, and must be so put with **peto** and **postulo**. **Quaero** may have the **ablative** with **ab** or **ex**. After **doceo**, **rogo** and **celo** the thing may be put in the **ablative** with **de**.

7. If these verbs are used in the **passive**, the accusative of the person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained.

I was asked my opinion by the consul.      **Sententiam a consule rogatus sum.**

8. The verbs that are called **factitive**—those of **making**, as **facio** and **creo**; of **calling**, as **appello**, and of **thinking**, as **iūdicō**—also take two accusatives: one is the direct object, the other completes the idea of the verb.

- (a) The people made Q. Fabius dictator.      **Dictatorem populus creavit Quintum Fābium.**
- (b) He called Fabius father.      **Patrem Fabium appellavit.**

9. If (a) is changed into a direct statement in the passive voice, the two accusatives become nominatives.

Q. Fabius was made dictator by the people.      **Quintus Fabius a populo creatus est dictator.**

If it is put in an indirect form, the sentence becomes :—

---

<sup>1</sup> This is a technical expression referring to procedure in the Roman Senate.



They say that Fabius was made dictator. Dicunt **Fabium** creatum esse **dictatorem**.

10. Verbs of motion compounded with trans, as **transdūco**, **transporto**, **trāicio**, also may have **two accusatives**.

He took a large part of the cavalry across the river. **Magnam partem** equitum **flumen** traiecit.

11. There are certain adverbial uses of the accusative. It denotes:—

(i.) **Extent of space.**

The ditch was ten feet broad. Fossa erat decem **pedes** lata.

(ii.) **Extent of time.**

(a) The consuls wait a few days. Consules **paucos** morantur **dies**.

(b) I am sixty years old. Sexagintā **annos** nātus sum.

(iii.) **Limitation of the action of a verb.**

This matter moves me deeply. Haec res me **multum** commōvet.

(iv.) **Motion towards** in the case of **towns**, **small islands**,<sup>1</sup> **domus** and **rus**.

(a) He came to Heraclea. Venit **Hēraclēam**.

(b) To-morrow I will go to the country. Cras ego **rus** ibo.

(v.) The **cognate accusative** is used when the noun and verb have a **kindred** meaning. The noun generally has some adjective with it.

(a) Let us rejoice with your joy. **Tuum gaudium** gaudeamus.

(b) The Romans used to play at dice. **Aleam** ludebant Romani.

12. The accusative is also found in exclamations.

Ah! wretched, unhappy man that I am. O **me miserum**, O **me infelicem**.

Several prepositions govern the accusative. A list will be found in Appendix I., A and C.

<sup>1</sup> Viz., those small enough to be considered as one place.

*Learn by heart and translate into English :—*

Publius Scipionem, eum qui primus Africānus appellatus est, dicere solum scripsit Cato, qui fuit fere eius aequalis, nunquam se minus otiosum esse quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum quam cum solus esset. Magnifica vero vox et magno viro ac sapiente digna, quae declarat illum et in otio de negotiis cogitare, et in solitudine secum loqui solitum.

### EXERCISE 2.

1. Our masters have always taught us the best accomplishments.

2. All nations regarded him as the saviour of the city.

3. He concealed this from us for several years, but his friends at length revealed everything.

4. Caesar hastened to lead three parts of his forces across the Rhine which at-that-point was forty feet broad ; the fourth part, which he left on this side of the river, returned to Aquileia.

5. The enemy have retired across the river into Gaul, but Caesar says that he will follow them.

6. I never concealed from you the disaster which threatened our fortunes.

7. I was deeply affected by the speech which your father delivered in the house of Cicero ; so I will return home to-morrow to my friends.

8. They say that your grandfather at the age of seventy devoted himself to the study of Greek literature.

9. All will acknowledge that Cicero was made consul on account of his great services to the state.

10. The democrats, who say that the state is in danger, wish to make Catiline consul, against the wishes of the senate ; but the decision lies with the whole people.

## CHAPTER III.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE—*Continued.*

**13.** The verb **promise**, which in English may have for its object a verb in the infinitive mood, is regarded in Latin as a verb of *saying* and governs the **accusative** and **infinitive**; as the fulfilment of the promise is future to the time denoted by the main verb this infinitive must be in the **future** tense. We may say in English *I promise to come* or *I promise that I will come*, but the Latin for either must be **Polliceor me venturum esse**.

Other verbs like this are those of **hoping**, **threatening**, **swearing**.

- (a) He hopes to be acquitted.    **Spērat se absolutum iri.**  
 (b) He was threatening to put    **Obsides se esse interfecturum**  
      the hostages to death.        **minabatur.**  
 (c) He hopes to be acquitted.    **Sperat fore ut absolvatur.**

This may be literally translated *he hopes that it will be that he may be acquitted*. The **ut** clause is substantival, and is the subject of the future infinitive **fore**. This form, which is very frequent as an alternative for (a), must always be employed in the case of verbs that have **no** future participle in -rus.

- (d) He hoped to be acquitted.    **Sperabat fore ut absolveretur.**

The tense of the verb after **fore ut** depends upon that of the main verb. The **present** subjunctive is used after a **primary** tense (59), the **imperfect** after a **historic** tense.

**14.** The **accusative** and **infinitive** is also found after certain verbs expressing **feeling**, as **rejoice**, **grieve**, **wonder**, and certain **nouns** having the **same** force as any of the above verbs.

- (a) The farmers **grieve** that sum-    **Agricolae dolent æstatem**  
      mer has come.                        **venisse.**  
 (b) Men are led on by the **hope** that    **Ducuntur homines spe sibi**  
      this will be useful to them.        **hoc utile futurum esse.**

15. **Sīmūlo**, *I pretend*, also must have this construction.

They pretend to **know** everything. **Se omnia scire simulant.**

16. An accusative and infinitive is used after **vīsum est** (*it seemed good*), **nuntiatum est** (*it was announced*), **constat** (*it is agreed*), **memoriae prōditum est** (*it has been handed down to memory*), **trāditum est** (*it has been handed down*), and almost any **neuter adjective** with **est**.<sup>1</sup>

(a) **It was announced** to Caesar **Caesari nuntiatum est eos**  
**that** they were attempting **per provinciam nostram**  
 to make their way through **iter facere conari.**  
 our province.

(b) **It was agreed that** the bar- **Barbaros ad castra venisse**  
 barians had come to the **constabat.**  
 camp.

17. The **impersonal** constructions *it seems, it is said*, are not used in Latin; the sentence must be changed to a **personal** form.

(a) **It seems that she** lived here. **Videtur ea hic habitasse.**  
 (= She seems to have lived here.)

(b) **It is said that she** lives here. } **Dicitur ea hic habitare,**  
 (= She is said to have lived here, } **or**  
 or they say that she lives here.) } **Dicunt eam hic habitare.**

18. If there is a **relative** or other clause strictly **subordinate** to an **accusative** and **infinitive**, that is, if the clause forms part of the indirect statement, its verb must be in the **subjunctive**.

Obs.—This is because such a clause is regarded as stating a thought and not a fact, though it is not necessarily implied that the thought is untrue.

(a) He said that those **who stood by** **Dixit eos qui adstarent**  
 were witnesses. **testes esse.**

<sup>1</sup> The accusative and infinitive in these cases is subjective: *e.g.*, in (b) **barbaros ad castra venisse** is the subject of **constat**.

- (b) They thought that they would re- Existimabant se obsides  
cover the hostages **which** they **quos dedissent reci-**  
**had given.** **peraturos.**<sup>1</sup>

19. Such sentences as *he says that he has not seen his brother* must be translated by **nēgat se fratrem vidisse** (*he denies that he has seen*). You must avoid *dicit non, dicit nunquam, dicit nihil*, and write **negat, negat unquam, negat quidquam**.

He **says** that he did **nothing**. **Negat se quidquam fecisse.**

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Duos pariētes de eadem fidēlia dealbo.

I kill two birds with one stone.

(Literally, I whitewash two walls from the same bucket.)

Una hīrundo non facit ver.

One swallow does not make a summer. (*lit. spring.*)

### EXERCISE 3.

- ✓ 1. The boy promised to use the money wisely.
- 2. He says that he never taught boys their alphabet.
- ✓ 3. I hope that the memory of our friendship will be undying.
- ✓ 4. It was thought that Cicero was the most eloquent of Roman orators.
- ✓ 5. It was reported to us by the scouts that the Gauls had brought the greater part of their cavalry across the river.
- 6. I hope that the war will be finished before the end of the summer.
- 7. The mother rejoiced [at the thought] that her son had so often faced death for his country.
- 8. Many people hoped that Cicero would be made consul.
- 9. Some-people pretend to despise those who take part in politics.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Esse** is understood, as it often is, after **reciperaturos**.





21. The substantival infinitive may still **retain its force as a verb** (i.) in having tenses, (ii.) in governing an object, (iii.) in having an adverb, not an adjective, to modify it.

It will be useful to you to have **Haec fīdeliter didicisse** tibi learnt this faithfully.                      **utile erit.**

**Didicisse** is the subjective infinitive, but governs the object **haec** and is modified by the adverb **fīdeliter**.

22. This infinitive may have a noun or pronoun in the **accusative** case as its **subject**.

**That you are happy** is agree-                      **Te beātum esse mihi est gra-**  
able to me.    **tum.**

**Te** is the subject of **esse beatum**, and **te beatum esse** is the subject of **est gratum**.

23. This infinitive is frequently translated into English by a noun.

A good and happy life.    **Bene beateque vivere.**

24. Certain verbs which are called **Modal** are followed by the **infinitive**. The commonest of these are **vōlo**,<sup>1</sup> *I wish*; **nōlo**, *I do not wish*; **mālo**, *I prefer*; **coepi**, *I have begun*; **incīpio**, *I begin*; **dēsīno**, *I cease*; **pergo**, *I continue*; **audeo**, *I dare*; **sōleo**, *I am accustomed*; **possum**, *I am able*; **dēbeo**, *I ought*; **stātuo** and **constituo**, *I decide*.

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) They <b>wished to make</b> a   | <b>Iter per Alpes munire vole-</b> |
| road over the Alps.                | <b>bant.</b>                       |
| (b) He <b>preferred being sub-</b> | <b>Populo Romano servire ma-</b>   |
| ject to Rome.                      | <b>luit.</b>                       |
| (c) <b>Cease to fear</b> death.    | <b>Desine mortem timere.</b>       |
| (d) We <b>cannot all do every-</b> | <b>Non omnia facere possumus</b>   |
| thing.                             | <b>omnes.</b>                      |

---

<sup>1</sup> *Volo, cupio, nolo and malo are also found governing an accusative and infinitive*



(e) She **prefers to be** alone.      **Mayult sola esse.**

**Sola** agrees with the subject of **mayult**.

(f) He **decided to return** home.      **Constituit domum redire.**

**Statuo** and **constituo** are followed by the infinitive when the subject of both the main verb and the infinitive is the same. Otherwise they have **ut** with the subjunctive.

(g) Caesar **decided that** the sol-      **Constituit Caesar ut milites**  
diers **should return** home.      **domum redirent.**

25. In describing scenes of great animation the present infinitive is sometimes employed, with a subject in the **nominative**, in the place of a past tense of the indicative. It is then called the **historic** infinitive. Examples of this will be found in the extract given below.

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Brevi spatio interiecto, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato **decurrere**, lapides gaesaeque in vallum **conicere**. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter **repugnare** neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore **mittere**, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo **occurrere** et auxilium **ferre**, sed hoc **superari** quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant; quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat.

#### EXERCISE 4.

1. To die nobly is better than to live dishonourably.
2. A life in accordance with nature is a happy life.
3. I am accustomed to rise at daybreak, for I wish to learn something fresh every day.
4. Cicero was wont to say that in the midst of arms Law is silent.
5. I prefer to pass over these matters, for it is not only on the stage but also in ordinary life that<sup>1</sup> you can see them.

---

<sup>1</sup> = for you can see them not only on the stage but also, etc. (75).

6. It is a crime to bind a Roman citizen ; to scourge [him] is an outrage.

7. I thought it best<sup>1</sup> for the garrison to retire within the fortifications.

8. He was now forty years old, and his fellow-citizens had begun to regard him as a consummate orator.

9. He would<sup>2</sup> rather be the subject of the Roman people than the master of others.

10. We who<sup>3</sup> are called Roman citizens ought to bear that disaster in mind.

11. At a given signal the Gauls suddenly leap from their horses, and from the higher ground charge down upon our camp. Some fill up the trenches, others tear down the rampart ; all alike eagerly desire to close with those who had burnt their towns and laid waste their fields. Our-men at first offer a brave resistance<sup>4</sup> to the superior-numbers of the enemy ; then on all sides they fling away [their] arms and seek safety in flight.

## CHAPTER V.

### DATIVE CASE.

26. The simplest use of the **dative** is as **indirect object** of a verb which also governs a direct object in the accusative.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (a) I committed this <b>to memory</b> .                             | Haec <b>memoriae</b> mandavi.   |
| (b) He showed <b>me</b> the way.                                    | Viam <b>mihi</b> monstravit.    |
| (c) He was threatening <b>everybody</b><br><b>with everything</b> . | <b>Omnibus omnia</b> minabatur. |

The difference between the Latin and English idiom should be noted.

27. Very many verbs which in English govern a direct object are followed by the **dative** in Latin and counted as intransitive. The most common are **făveo**, *I favour* ; **impěro**, *I command* ;

<sup>1</sup> = it seemed best to me.

<sup>2</sup> = he prefers to be.

<sup>3</sup> What person is this ?

<sup>4</sup> = bravely resisted.

**indulgeo**, *I indulge*; **invideo**, *I envy*; **nŏceo**, *I hurt*; **parco**, *I spare*; **pāreo**, *I obey*; **persuadeo**, *I persuade*; **plāceo**, *I please*; **rēsisto**, *I resist*.

(a) The consuls indulge (give way to) the eagerness of the legions. **Indulgent** consules lēgionum **ardori**.

(b) Lands and seas obey him. **Huic** maria terraeque **parent**.

(c) They did not spare the women. **Non** mūlieribus **pepercerunt**.

**28. Impero**<sup>1</sup> may have an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person.

He demanded hostages from the Gauls. **Gallis obsides imperavit**.

**29. Persuadeo**<sup>1</sup> may have a neuter pronoun in the accusative as well as an indirect object.

He persuaded me of this. **Hoc mihi persuasit**.

**30. Consūlo** governs the **accusative** when it means *I ask advice of*; and the **dative** when it means *I consult the interests of*.

(a) I consult the doctor. **Medicum consulo**.

(b) I consult the interests of the state. **Rei publicae consulo**.

**31.** The dative is also used to denote the **person concerned** after compound verbs formed with certain prepositions, as **ad**, **ante**, **cum**, **de**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, and some adverbs, as **bēnē**, **mālē**, **sātis**. Some of these verbs are transitive as in (a) and (b); others intransitive as in (c) and (d).

(a) Let us wrest victory from the enemy. **Victoriam hosti extorqueamus**.

(b) The gods have robbed you of your senses. **Di immortales tibi mentem adēmerunt**.

(c) Do you dare to abuse such a man? **Tunc audes tanto viro male-dicere?**

<sup>1</sup> For other uses of **impero** and **persuadeo** see (167).

(d) Check beginnings.

**Principiis obsta.**

Verbs compounded with prepositions must be noticed as they occur in Latin authors. The construction with a preposition is generally found when the verb is used literally.

(e) Let us wrest the weapons, **Tela e manibus** hostium ex  
from the hands of the **torqueamus.**  
enemy.

**32. Compounds of sum** take the dative.

(a) Junius who had presided over **Condemnatus est** Junius, qui  
that inquiry was condemned. **ei quaestioni praefuerat.**

(b) I support my friends in this **In hac causa amicis adsum.**  
case.

**33.** The dative also follows certain adjectives and adverbs which express **usefulness, fitness, likeness, nearness, helpfulness, trust, agreeableness, and the opposites** of these.

(a) You will do me a great favour. **Pergratum mihi facies.**  
(You will do a thing very pleasing to me.)

(b) Can this light be agreeable to **Potestne tibi haec lux esse**  
you? **iucunda?**

(c) I have never perceived that old **Nunquam tibi senectutem**  
age was burthensome to you. **gravem** esse sensi.

(d) To live in accordance with **Convenienter naturae vi-**  
nature. **vere.**

*Latin Proverbs.*

**Flamma fumo est proxima.**

Where there is smoke there is fire.

(The flame is very near to the smoke.)

**Inopi nullus amicus.**

The poor man has no friends.

(To the poor there is no friend.)

## EXERCISE 5.

1. Nothing was more agreeable to Catiline than to wage war against his own country.

2. He promised me to do everything that I wished.

3. Cease to fear death ; you ought to prefer death to slavery.

4. He said that he was envious of those who lived in accordance with nature.

5. The democrats, says he, who have nothing always envy those who possess wealth.

6. You were never willing to consult the interests of your fellow-citizens ; it seems to me that in secret you have always favoured Catiline.

7. For my part I have always believed that the state was saved by Cicero, but I have never been able to convince you of this.

8. I do not wish to pardon those who have waged war on their own country and threatened their sovereign with death.

9. Your lot and mine are common ; both wife and daughter have been taken from us.

10. You have paid your brother a just and due penalty for your sins, and therefore your father will soon pardon you.

## CHAPTER VI.

## IMPERSONALS.

**34.** An impersonal verb is one used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive. Such verbs are employed to denote (i.) changes in the weather or sky, as **plūit**, *it rains* ; **tōnat**, *it thunders* ; **illūcet**, *it is dawning* ; (ii.) feelings of the mind, as **mīseret**, *it excites pity* ; **pūdet**, *it shames* ; **paenītet**, *it repents* ; **pīget**, *it disgusts* ; **taedet**, *it wearies*.

All of the latter class take an **accusative** of the **person** and a **genitive** of the **thing**, or occasionally a substantival infinitive.

- (a) I am ashamed } of your negli- Pudet }  
 I am wearied } gence. Taedet } me nēquitiae tuae.  
 (b) It is clear that you are ashamed Pudere te nequitiae ap-  
 of your negligence. paret.  
 (c) I do not regret defending this Non me paenitet hanc cau-  
 case. sam defendere.

**35. Dēcet, it becomes, and dēdēcet, it misbecomes, take an accusative of the person and an infinitive.**

- (a) It is by no means becoming to Oratorem irasci minime  
 an orator to grow angry. decet.

The infinitive phrase is really the subject of decet, which may also have a noun or pronoun as subject.

- (b) Small things become the small. Parvum parva decent.

**36. Libet, it pleases, and licet, it is lawful, take a dative and infinitive.**

It is not lawful for me to be Mihi neglegenti esse non  
 careless. licet.

It should be noticed that neglegenti agrees with mihi.

**37. Interest, it is of importance, has the genitive of the person or thing concerned, but requires the following forms of the possessive adjective—meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā—when the person concerned is of the first or second person or third person reflexive.**

The thing that is considered important may be expressed by a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, an ut-clause, or an indirect question (138). Rēfert,<sup>1</sup> it concerns, takes the same forms.

The safety of the state is of the Et tuā et Ciceronis maxime  
 greatest importance to you and interest rem publicam  
 to Cicero. tutam esse.

(It is of importance to you and to Cicero  
 that the state should be safe.)

<sup>1</sup>This impersonal must not be confused with rēfert, the 3rd sing. pres. indic. of rēfero, I carry back.



**38. Intransitive** verbs are not used in the **passive** voice in Latin except **impersonally**.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) A rush was made to the walls.<br>(It was rushed to the walls.)                     | <b>Concursum</b> in muros <b>est</b> .            |
| (b) We run to the temple.<br>(It is run by us)   | <b>A nobis</b> ad templum <b>cur-<br/>ritur</b> . |
| (c) A fierce engagement took place there.<br>(It was fought fiercely there.)           | <b>Ibi</b> atrociter pugnatum <b>est</b> .        |
| (d) He said that a fierce engagement took place there.                                 | <b>Dixit</b> ibi atrōciter pugnatum <b>esse</b> . |
| (e) The war can be brought to an end at once.<br>(It can be warred to an end at once.) | <b>Potest</b> statim debellari.                   |

It is only with a passive impersonal that **potest** can be used impersonally.

**39. Verbs** which govern the **dative** being really intransitive verbs, must be made **impersonal** when **passive**.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) The consul obeys the command.  | <b>Dicto</b> paret consul.                        |
| (b) The command is being obeyed by the consul.<br>(It is being obeyed to the command.) | <b>Dicto</b> a consule <b>paretur</b> .           |
| (c) They could not be persuaded.<br>(It could not be persuaded to them.)               | <b>His</b> persuaderi non <b>poterat</b> .        |
| (d) They envy the good and favour the wicked.  | <b>Bonis</b> invident, favent malis. <sup>1</sup> |
| (e) The good are envied, and the wicked favoured.                                      | <b>Bonis</b> invidetur, fav-<br>-etur malis.      |

*Latin Proverbs.*

In silvam ligna ferre.

To carry coals to Newcastle.

(To carry logs into a wood.)

---

<sup>1</sup> For the order of the words see Appendix II. (8).



Poeta nascitur, non fit.  
A poet is born, not made.

## EXERCISE 6.

1. He said that he did not envy the wealth of his fellow-citizens.

2. To the last day of his life he never repented of the crimes which he had committed.

3. The laws which hitherto have been disregarded are now being obeyed; the city has been saved by the resolution of the consul.

4. I shall never be convinced<sup>1</sup> that this is to the interest of the state.

5. A cry was raised<sup>1</sup> on all sides that the spirit of the Romans was broken, and that the war would soon be over.<sup>1</sup>

6. It is of the greatest importance to us that you should return to Rome; we are certainly entitled to demand this from you.

7. For nearly three hours fighting was carried on<sup>1</sup>; a fierce resistance was being offered<sup>1</sup> to the superior-numbers of the enemy.

8. Catiline pretended that he was ill and wished to make his will; I am not yet persuaded<sup>1</sup> that he spoke the truth.

9. I have decided to take part in political life and to attach myself to the patriotic party; no one is entitled to be neutral.

10. When at daybreak they arrived<sup>1</sup> at the camp of the enemy, the unusual silence excited wonder. Then a loud cry was raised by our men that the Gauls who had resisted Caesar so long had sought safety in flight, and that the road to the city now lay open. But the officers through fear of an ambuscade ordered their men to halt outside of the fortifications, and threatened with death all who refused to obey their commands.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use passive impersonal.

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE DATIVE.—APPOSITION.

**40.** The dative is used **predicatively** with certain verbs to express **purpose**. It occurs with the verb **sum** more frequently than with any other, but is also found with certain verbs of motion and with **do** and **verto**. It may be accompanied by another dative, that of the person or thing interested.

- (a) Two legions served **as a protection** to the baggage.      *Duae legiones praesidio impedimentis<sup>1</sup> erant.*
- (b) This matter has been **pre-judicial** to no one.      *Ea res nemini fraudi fuit.*

The predicative dative takes the place of a noun or adjective used predicatively in the nominative or accusative case, and it generally can be so expressed in English.

- (c) This was a great **hindrance** to the Gauls in fighting.      *Gallis magno ad pugnam hoc erat impedimento.<sup>1</sup>*
- (d) What an **assistance** that was!      *Quanto adiumento illuderat.*
- Only adjectives of quantity can be used with this dative, such as **agnus**, **maximus**, **tantus** and **quantus**.
- (e) That day's delay proved the **salvation** of the city.      *Mora eius diei urbi fuit saluti.*
- (f) They were coming to the **assistance** of the Nervii.      *Auxilio Nervii veniebant.*

- (g) He reckoned this as a fault to me.      *Hoc mihi vitio vertit.*

**41.** The dative of the person interested is also used in several cases where in English we find a possessive genitive or possessive adjective.

- (a) All flung themselves at **Caesar's** feet.      *Sese omnes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt.*
- (b) Many things come into **my** mind.      *Multa mihi in mentem veniunt.*

<sup>1</sup> *Impedimentum* (sing.) = a hindrance; *impedimenta* (plur.) = baggage.

**42.** A noun (or pronoun) is sometimes defined or described by another noun, which is said to be in **apposition** with the first and agrees in case with it. Appositional words and phrases **follow** the noun, unless specially emphatic.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Tigranes the king of Armenia<br>received him.    | Hunc <b>Tigranes</b> , rex Arme-<br>nius, excepit. |
| (b) Our old enemies the Volsci<br>had taken up arms. | <b>Volsci</b> , veteres hostes,<br>arma ceperant.  |
| (c) The eloquent Hortensius.                         | <b>Hortensius</b> , vir eloquent-<br>issimus.      |

An adjective is not put attributively with proper names, but the word **vir** or **homo** is inserted in apposition and the adjective is made to agree with that. The superlative degree is often used where the English has the positive. **Vir** is usually the noun employed with adjectives of high commendation.

- (d) The merciful judges acquitted the defendant. **Iudices, viri clementissimi, reum absolverunt.**

The same sort of apposition is employed with common nouns denoting particular persons. The words *virī clementissimī* have in this example an adverbial signification. They explain the cause of the acquittal.

- (e) Most of you knew Manilius. **Māniliūm plerique noratis.**  
**Plerique** is in apposition with the unexpressed subject of **noratis**.

**43.** Geographical terms are put in apposition, as *the city of Rome, urbs Roma*; *the river Rhine, flumen Rhēnus*. The following example should be noted.

He betook himself to the beautiful island of Rhodes. Rhodum<sup>1</sup> in insulam pulcherrimam se contulit.

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Quattuor robustos filios, quinque filias, tantam domum, tantas clientelas Appius regebat et caecus et senex; intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habebat nec languescens succumbebat senectuti. Tenebat non modo auctoritatem, sed etiam imperium in suos; metuebant servi, verebantur liberi, carum omnes habebant; vigebat in illo animus patrius et disciplina.

<sup>1</sup> See (11, iv.).

## EXERCISE 7.

1. The ancient city of Athens is said <sup>1</sup> to have been the light of Greece.

2. The eloquent judge who presided over that inquiry made a long speech, and yet failed to convince <sup>2</sup> Cicero that this would be fatal to the defendant.

3. It is recorded in Livy that the city of Rome was founded by Romulus.

4. I am exceedingly angry with Cicero: it is universally agreed that your father has been unjustly condemned.

5. You say that this has not been a source-of-pleasure to you, but most of you understand that it will be the salvation of your city.

6. I hope to come to the aid of the eminent and virtuous Appius: they tell me that he still holds command over his family.

7. How often has that dagger been wrested from your hands! This will be an example to your friends.

8. The defendant, a most conscientious person, avers that violent hands were laid upon him in his own shop.

9. The treacherous Junius, who wished to resign the office which he then held, flung himself at the consul's feet. I am certain that this will be very painful to every one.

10. In spite of your eloquence <sup>3</sup> you will hardly convince the jury; for the defendant is hated by all who know him.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PARTICIPLES.

**44.** A verb in the **active** voice has **two** participles, *e.g.*, the present as **amans**, and the future as **amaturus**. A verb in the **passive** has **one**, the perfect, as **amatus**. A **deponent** has

<sup>1</sup> Make the verb agree with *urbs*.

<sup>2</sup> = And yet did not convince: what is the Latin for *and not*?

<sup>3</sup> Use adjective in apposition (42, d).

three, the present as **hortans**, the perfect as **hortatus**, and the future as **hortaturus**.

45. The present participle like the present infinitive denotes an action **simultaneous** with the action of the verb in the sentence to which the participle belongs.

(a) He sent Junius away (while) calling gods and men to witness. Iunium dimisit deos atque homines **obtestantem**.

(b) I heard you **singing**. Te **canentem** audiui.

This may be contrasted with :—

(c) I hear that you **sing**. Te **canere** audio.

46. The present participle in English sometimes refers to past time or has a causal meaning. It cannot then be translated by the Latin present participle.

(a) **Knowing** this I returned home. Quae **cum scirem** domum redii.

The phrase *knowing this* is causal, and is therefore rendered by *cum* (since) with the **subjunctive**.

(b) **Returning** home I learnt that my father was absent. **Cum domum rediissem**<sup>1</sup> patrem abesse comperi,  
or **Postquam domum redii**,<sup>2</sup>  
etc.,  
or **Domum reversus**, etc.

*Returning* here is loosely used for *having returned*, a perfect participle active. There is no such participle in Latin, and so we must use a conjunction with a finite verb, or the perfect participle of a deponent, which has an active meaning.

47. The present participle in other cases than the nominative is used with greater freedom, and takes the place of an adjectival relative clause or of a noun.

(a) You might distinguish the varying expressions of those who parted from the messengers. Vários vultus **digredientium** ab nuntiis cerneres.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. (270).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. (263).

- (b) He made no reply **to his questioners** *Interrogantibus* nihil  
(to those questioning him). *respondit.*

CAUTION.—*To those questioning* is **not** *eis interrogantibus.*

**48.** The **future** participle is always **active** in meaning. In combination with parts of *esse* it may be :—

(i.) A future infinitive active, as **amaturus esse**, *to be about to love.*

(ii.) An emphatic future indicative, as **amaturus sum**, *I am about to love.*

(iii.) A future subjunctive active, as **amaturus sim**, *I may be about to love.*

**49.** Participles are really verbal adjectives, and in Latin agree like adjectives with the word to which they belong. They are much more frequent in Latin than in English, the former often having a participle where we have a subordinate sentence.

**50.** The perfect participle is only active in meaning when it is part of a deponent verb.

**As you had promised** to come **Pollicitus** te venturum esse  
you were bound to keep your *fidem praestare debuisti.*  
word.

(Literally, *having promised, etc.*)

In the case of a verb which is not deponent, where the English has a perfect participle active, we must put **cum** with the **pluperfect subjunctive** or use the **ablative absolute** (55, c), or recast the sentence entirely. If in the last example the active verb **promitto** had been chosen instead of the deponent **polliceor**, *as you had promised* would have been rendered by **cum promisisses.**

**51.** The participle is also employed instead of an English **co-ordinate sentence**, thus effecting an economy in predicates.

(a) They **captured and plundered** Oppidum **captum** diripu-  
the town. *erunt.*

(They plundered the captured town.)



- (b) They suddenly **attacked** the town **and** took it at the first onset. Oppidum improvise **adorti** primo impetu cepere.

(Having suddenly attacked the town, they, etc.)

- (c) The camp of the Volsci was taken and plundered. **Castra Volscorum capta ac direpta sunt.**

Where there are two participles the conjunction must be inserted.

**52.** In the sentence **Camillus auditus imperator hosti terrorem intulit** (*Camillus having been heard of as commander struck terror into the enemy*), the emphasis is on **auditus**, and the proper translation is *the news of Camillus' appointment as general struck terror into the enemy*. Other examples of this emphatic use of the participle are:—

- (a) After **news of the battle.** Post **auditam pugnam.**  
 (b) The **loss of Hector** delivered Troy over to the Greeks. **Ademptus Hector** tradidit Pergamā Graiis.  
 (c) From the **foundation of the city.** Ab urbe conditā.  
 (d) Our ancestors did not brook the **curtailing of their liberty.** Māiores nostri **libertatem imminutam** non tulerunt.

(Literally, the curtailed liberty.)

- (e) The **withdrawal of the pickets** caused wonder. **Subductae stātionē** admirationem fecerunt.

It will be seen in all these examples that the participle is translated by a substantive, and the noun to which it is joined by a genitive. Perhaps the construction was adopted in Latin on account of the lack of abstract nouns.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

**Male parta male dilabuntur.**

Ill got, ill spent.

(Things badly obtained slip away badly.)

**Multa petentibus desunt multa.**

He who craves much lacks much.

(Many things are lacking to those seeking many things.)



## EXERCISE 8.

1. Mithridates in his flight<sup>1</sup> left behind a large quantity of gold and silver, which he had inherited from his ancestors.

2. The loss<sup>1</sup> of our liberty is a proof that the spirit of the Romans has been broken.

3. The defendant preferred to make no reply to those who questioned<sup>1</sup> him.

4. The Volsci will soon surrender the city which-has-been-besieged<sup>1</sup> for four years.

5. I will set forth the achievements of the Romans after the foundation<sup>1</sup> of the city to the capture of Veii.

6. The consuls wait a few days and allow Hannibal to escape from their hands.

7. Having reached the city he announced that Catiline had been slain, and that the war was at an end.

8. And without saying<sup>2</sup> more, calling the slaves to arms the desperate fellow attempted to rush out of the city.

9. I hear the voices of [people] crying through the city that the enemy is at hand.

10. The Gauls were deeply moved<sup>1</sup> by this news, and decided to offer a brave resistance to the legions.

11. Hardly had the soldiers who had come to protect the women and children landed<sup>3</sup> than they were surrounded by a threatening crowd.

12. At sunrise the tyrant's soldiers, pouring through the many gates of the camp, began to advance towards the grove where the Romans had taken their stand. Turning to his men the general orders the flag to be displayed, "This," says he, "is the battle which you have demanded. I feel sure that no one will lose the opportunity which has been presented to us. Let us wrest victory from the enemy and shield our allies from disaster."

---

<sup>1</sup> Use a participle.

<sup>2</sup> = and not having said more.

<sup>3</sup> = a crowd surrounded the soldiers having hardly landed.

CHAPTER IX.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**53.** The participles are very frequent in the construction called **ablative absolute**. A **participle** is placed in agreement with a **noun** or **pronoun** in the **ablative** case, the whole phrase being adverbial and expressing the "**attendant circumstances**" which modify the action of some predicate. This construction is called absolute because it is not dependent on any other word in the sentence. Any part of speech that can be used predicatively may take the place of the participle. In English the construction is rare; a subordinate adverbial clause is generally employed in its stead.

**After this speech had been delivered** he dismissed the council.      **Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit.**

The ablative absolute will sometimes supply the place of the **non-existent perfect participle active**. We might say in English, *Having delivered this speech he dismissed the council*. There is no participle corresponding to the active *having delivered*, so we change the English to the **passive** form, *this speech having been delivered*, and translate as in above example.

**54.** This construction may have for its components, subjective and predicative,

- |                             |                          |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (i.) Noun + participle.     | <b>Sole orto.</b>        | <i>After sunrise.</i>                |
| (ii.) Pronoun + participle. | <b>Te iuvante.</b>       | <i>With your aid.</i>                |
| (iii.) Noun + adjective.    | <b>Militibus laetis.</b> | <i>To the joy of the soldiers.</i>   |
| (iv.) Pronoun + adjective.  | <b>Me vivo.</b>          | <i>In my lifetime.</i>               |
| (v.) Noun + noun.           | <b>Consule Planco.</b>   | <i>In the consulship of Plancus.</i> |
| (vi.) Pronoun + noun.       | <b>Me consule.</b>       | <i>In my consulship.</i>             |

- (vii.) Noun clause + participle. **Explorato hostes adesse.** *It being ascertained that the enemy were at hand.*

55. Examples of its use are:—

- (a) **Without opposition** they reached the reserves. **Nulla resistente** ad subsidia pervenerunt.
- (b) **At the beginning of summer** he came to the army. **Inita aestate** ad exercitum venit.
- (c) **Having burnt all the villages** they hastened to Rome. **Omnibus vicis incensis** Romam contendunt.
- (d) **After an interval of three days** he himself followed. **Ipse triduo intermisso** secutus est.
- (e) The Volsci **threw down their arms and** surrendered. **Volsci abiectis armis** sese dediderunt.

56. This construction cannot be used when its noun or pronoun is **subject** or **object** of the sentence.

Caesar having been moved by this news enrolled two fresh legions. **His nuntiis commotus** **Caesar** duas legiones novas conscripsit.

Caesare commoto is inadmissible, as Caesar is subject of conscripsit.

57. There is a tendency in modern English writers to use co-ordinate sentences independent of one another instead of subordinate clauses. In Latin the principal statement appears in a principal sentence, and all ideas leading up to it or proceeding from it are expressed by subordinate clauses and participial phrases.

*Learn by heart and translate:—*

Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ieecerunt; et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt, atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi, perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, per-

paucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et trigintā millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt.

EXERCISE 9.

1. No one, while I am alive,<sup>1</sup> shall say that this is not true.

2. The barbarians, raising a shout,<sup>1</sup> leap from their horses, throw down<sup>1</sup> their shields at the general's feet and attack the disordered ranks of the Greeks.

3. Pompeius seems to have led his forces through the enemy's territory without opposition.<sup>1</sup>

4. As-I-walk<sup>2</sup> in my garden at the beginning<sup>1</sup> of spring nothing delights me more than the sight of my vines.

5. Fearing this, the consul ordered the captives to be spared, armed and unarmed alike: and so one and all returned safe home.

6. My father says that men's character does not change on the approach<sup>1</sup> of old age.

7. For my part I have always believed that the consciousness of a well-spent life is a great solace to old men.

8. The Etruscans wheel round<sup>1</sup> and retire to their camp, which was three miles away from the city.

9. After the town had been plundered<sup>1</sup> the victorious Gauls set fire to the buildings before the eyes<sup>3</sup> of the praetor.

10. With these words<sup>4</sup> the general, drawing his sword, ordered his lieutenants to display the flag.

11. Schooled-as-we-have-been<sup>2</sup> by misfortune, we ought to bear in mind that [lesson] which the tyrant himself has taught us.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> Participle.

<sup>3</sup> = The praetor looking on. Ablative absolute.

<sup>4</sup> = Having said these things.

## CHAPTER X.

## FINAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

**58.** A subordinate clause in Latin is called **Final** when it indicates the **purpose** of the principal sentence. Such a clause may be headed by a conjunction as **ut, nē, quo,** or a **relative** pronoun. Purpose is never denoted by the infinitive, as it often is in English.

<p>The praetors summoned a meeting of the senate <b>that</b> they <b>might</b> <b>deliberate</b> on the safety of the city.</p>	<p>Praetores senatum convoca- verunt <b>ut</b> de urbis salute <b>consulerent.</b></p>
---	--

The clause *that they might deliberate* is adverbial and final, and must not be confused with a **noun clause** beginning with *that*. In *the general said that the city had been captured*, the *that*-clause is the object of *said*, and must be in the accusative and infinitive. In a final clause *in order that* may be substituted for *that* in the English, and the verb following has *may* or *might* as an auxiliary.

**59.** If the principal verb is in a **primary** tense (present, future or present-perfect), the verb in the **ut**-clause will be in the **present** subjunctive; if the principal verb is in a **historic** tense (imperfect, aorist-perfect or pluperfect), the subordinate verb will be in the **imperfect** subjunctive.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) The praetors <b>will</b> summon<br/>the senate <b>to deliberate</b> on<br/>the safety of the city.</p>                   | <p>Praetores senatum <b>convo-</b><br/><b>cabunt ut</b> de urbis salute<br/><b>consulant.</b></p>   |
| <p>(b) The praetors <b>have called</b> the<br/>senate together <b>to deliber-</b><br/><b>ate</b> on the safety of the city.</p> | <p>Praetores senatum <b>convo-</b><br/><b>caverunt ut</b> de urbis<br/>salute <b>consulant.</b></p> |

**Convocaverunt** is present-perfect, and therefore the subordinate verb is in the **present** subjunctive. The Latin perfect has two parts to play. **Amavi** may mean **I have loved** and then it is **primary**, or **I loved** and then it is **historic**.

60. The principal sentence frequently contains the words **idcirco** or **ideo** (*on that account*) or **eo consilio** (*with that idea*) in order to emphasise the purpose.

61. If the purpose is **negative**, *i.e.*, if something is to be prevented, then *in order that not* (or *lest*) must be translated by **nē**.<sup>1</sup>

(a) I went away into the country **Ne** pater irasceretur rus abii.  
**in order that** my father  
 might **not** be angry.

(b) I go away to the country **to** **Ne** pater irascatur rus abeo.  
**prevent** my father **being**  
 angry.

(In order that my father may not  
 be angry.)

62. A **relative** pronoun with the **subjunctive** may express purpose.

I sent my brother **to wish** you **Fratrem misi qui tibi gratu-**  
**joy.** **laretur.**

**Qui** here equals **ut** is, *that he might wish you joy.*

63. If there is an adjective or adverb in the **comparative** degree in the final clause, **quo** (= **ut eo**) must be employed instead of **ut**.

He set fire to all the buildings **in** **Omnia aedificia incendit quo**  
**order that** the approach to the **apertior** aditus ad moenia  
 walls might be **more** clear. **esset.**

64. The final subjunctive with **ut** or **ne** is used to translate the English **parenthetical infinitive**.

Some people foolishly, **not to say** **Nonnulli stulte, ne dicam**  
 shamelessly, refuse to take part **impudenter, in re publica**  
 in politics. **versari nolunt.**

<sup>1</sup> Cicero occasionally has **ut ne** in negative final clauses.



65. If the statement is direct, a relative clause which is grammatically subordinate to a final clause will be in the **indicative**,<sup>1</sup> when it expresses an independent fact.

He sent the cavalry on in advance	Equites praemisit ut tumu-
to seize the hill <b>which</b> I men-	lum quem ante diximus
<b>tioned</b> before.	caperent.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Inter os atque offam multa intervenire possunt.

There's many a slip 'twixt the cup and the lip.

(Between the mouth and the morsel many things can intervene.)

Fortes fortuna adiuvat.

Fortune favours the brave.

### EXERCISE 10.

1. After this defeat<sup>2</sup> the Gauls sent ambassadors to beg for peace.

2. He told us that the jury had received a bribe in order to condemn an innocent man.

3. I will bring forward further instances that my speech may have greater weight.

4. I will do my best to convince the judges that the defendant is innocent.

5. To prevent<sup>3</sup> their being seen by the enemy Crassus attempted to lead round the cohorts, which had been left behind as a protection to the baggage, by another route.

6. You ought to commit these speeches to memory in order to understand them more clearly.

7. Fearing this I have hastened home to help you; it is impossible for me to abandon my friends.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is sometimes attracted into the subjunctive by the influence of the verb in the final clause.

<sup>2</sup> This defeat having been received.

<sup>3</sup> (61, b).



8. I for my part confess, to return<sup>1</sup> to myself, that I paid attention to those pursuits in order not to displease my excellent father, who has always been devoted to Greek literature.

9. Horace was brought to Rome by his father in order that he might be taught the liberal arts.

10. Caesar sent fifty soldiers to break down the bridge, in order to prevent the Gauls from crossing the river by night and attacking his camp.

11. I have not brought forward these instances in order to commend my own speeches, but rather that I may seem to be urging you on to higher aims.<sup>2</sup> They say that truth always prevails. While you hold this office manage your affairs in such a way<sup>3</sup> that your fairness and uprightness may be approved by every one. To prevent<sup>4</sup> your falling into error, I will acknowledge that I regard you as a friend, and that I will do my best to be of the greatest assistance to you.

## CHAPTER XI.

### FINAL SUBJUNCTIVE.—VERBS OF FEARING.

66. In final clauses *ut* must not be followed by a negative word. So

**that not**        **is ne.**

**that no one**   **is ne quis** (*lest any one*).

**that nothing** **is ne quid** (*lest anything*).

**that never**    **is ne unquam** (*lest ever*).

I wish to name all **that no one** may    *Omnes nōminare volo ne*  
complain that he has been passed        **quis** *se praetermissum*  
over.    *esse queratur.*

67. When **two** clauses of negative purpose are conjoined **nēve** (not neque) must be used with the second.

<sup>1</sup> (64).

<sup>2</sup> = to higher things.

<sup>3</sup> Ita.

<sup>4</sup> (61, b).

I went into the country that my father might not be angry with me **or** think that I was deserting my friends.      Rus abii ne pater mihi irasceret **neve** putaret me amicis deesse.

**68.** Relative adverbs <sup>1</sup> are sometimes found with a final subjunctive.

Appius made a road **where** his descendants might play the highwayman with impunity.      Appius viam munivit ubi impune posteris sui latrōcīnarentur.

**69.** The construction of verbs of **fearing**, as **vĕreor**,<sup>2</sup> **tīmeo**, **mĕtuo** is as follows :—

I fear **that** or I fear **lest** is **vĕreor ne** with subjunctive.  
 I fear **that not** is **vĕreor ne non** or **vĕreor ut**.  
 I fear **that nothing** is **vĕreor ne nihil**.  
 I fear **that never** is **vĕreor ne nunquam**.  
 I fear **lest any one** is **vĕreor ne quis**.  
 I do **not fear that not** is **non vĕreor ne non**.

(a) I am afraid **that** he will be **Vĕreor ne** absolvatur. acquitted.

After **vĕreor** the English future is translated by the present or imperfect subjunctive unless the futurity is very emphatic.

(b) I was afraid **that** he would **Verebar ut** (or **ne non**) absolveretur. not be acquitted.

(c) I am afraid **that**he is never **Vĕreor ne** nunquam sit redditurus. likely to return.

(d) I fear **that** nothing will induce him to return. **Vĕreor ne nihil eum adducat ut redeat**.

**70.** The phrases **mĕtus est**, *there is a fear*, and **periculum est**, *there is danger*, may be followed by a similar construction. The **fear** is **lest** fortune should **Metus est ne** fortuna nos abandon us. **deserat**.

<sup>1</sup> Relative adverbs have a conjunctive as well as an adverbial force, and unite sentences or clauses.

<sup>2</sup> **Vĕreor** expresses fear arising from awe; **tīmeo** fear arising from a sense of danger. **metuo** apprehension which causes one to take precautions.

71. The following forms of expression should be noted :—

- (a) He is **worthy to be loved.** *Dignus est qui ametur.*  
 (b) He is **too stern to be loved.** *Severior est quam ut (or qui) ametur.*<sup>1</sup>  
 (c) He is **too wicked to be** *Peior est quam ut ei (or pardoned.* *cui) ignoscatur.*<sup>1</sup>

The relative is an alternative for the conjunction and demonstrative.

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Hannibal, magnum terrorem hostibus morte consulis unius, vulnere alterius iniectum esse ratus, ne cui deesset occasione, castra in tumulum, in quo pugnatum erat, extemplo transfert. Ibi inventum Marcelli corpus sepelit. Crispinus, et morte collegae et suo vulnere territus, silentio insequentis noctis profectus ad proximos colles se recepit quo tutius castra poneret.

### EXERCISE 11.

1. I was afraid that he would not come, but now I am afraid he will.

2. He is too kind to vent his anger on the helpless.

3. We are afraid that nothing will induce you to avail-yourself of this opportunity.

4. The Volsci, thinking that they were surrounded, flung down<sup>2</sup> their arms and surrendered.

5. You are unworthy to command an army of brave men.

6. There was a risk of war breaking out before the end of the summer ; so Catiline hastened to Rome in order that he might not lose any opportunity, or<sup>3</sup> seem to have resigned his office.

7. The consul, dismayed by the death of his colleague and fearing that the Gauls were likely-to-attack the town, moved the 14th legion out of winter quarters.

---

<sup>1</sup> These are consecutive subjunctives (Ch. XIII.).

<sup>2</sup> Participle.      <sup>3</sup> (67).

8. There is no place more worthy to receive him than the temple which he saved by his valour.

9. I wonder that you do not dread the fate of those whose deeds you are imitating.<sup>1</sup>

10. We are all ashamed of your folly; I can hardly believe that you are worthy to speak on behalf of your fellow-citizens.

11. I was afraid<sup>2</sup> lest I should hurt your grandfather's feelings, and resigned the consulship in order to prevent<sup>3</sup> any one saying that I had abandoned my friend.

12. He has humoured my father in order not to seem ungrateful to me.

## CHAPTER XII.

### ADJECTIVES.

72. The form of expression in one language naturally differs from that in another. An English **adjective phrase** is often rendered in Latin by a simple **adjective**, and conversely an adjective in English is not necessarily translated by a Latin adjective.

(a) A life **of degradation**.

Vita turpissima.

(b) The reverse **at Ostia**.

Ostiense incommodum.

The adjective phrase *at Ostia* is translated by an adjective agreeing with *incommodum*.

(c) Brutus delivered the state from  
the tyranny **of kings**.

Brutus civitatem dominatu  
**regio** liberavit.

(d) **Bodily** tortures.

Cruciatus corporis.

The genitive *corporis* translates the adjective *bodily*.

(e) **Mental** repose.

Requies animi.

(f) **Capital** punishment.

Capitis poena.

73. The **adjective** often corresponds to the **English adverb** or **adverbial phrase**.

<sup>1</sup> (18).

<sup>2</sup> Participle.

<sup>3</sup> (61).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) They <b>mutely</b> ask.                       | <b>Taciti</b> rogant.                          |
| (b) I <b>reluctantly</b> warned you of this.      | De hac re vos <b>invitus</b> admonui.          |
| (c) His son was <b>continually</b> on the estate. | Eius filius <b>assiduus</b> in prae-diis erat. |
| (d) I helped you <b>gladly</b> .                  | <b>Laetus</b> tibi subveni.                    |

74. This last example might have been translated *I was glad to help you*. So:—

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (a) I was <b>the last</b> to help you.            | <b>Ultimus</b> tibi subveni.         |
| (b) I <b>was the first</b> to express my opinion, | } <b>Primus</b> ego sententiam dixi. |
| or  |                                      |
| I <b>was the first</b> who expressed my opinion.  |                                      |

75. The particular arrangement of the words in Latin gives the emphasis required, but an English sentence is less flexible, and it is often necessary to expand the simple sentence into a complex one in order to put stress on a particular word. If in the simple sentence *Brutus killed Caesar* we wish to emphasise *Brutus*, we say *It was Brutus who killed Caesar*; this must not be translated into Latin word for word, but we keep the simple sentence and lay stress on the word *Brutus* by putting it at the end, thus, **Caesarem interfecit Brutus**.<sup>1</sup>

It was for this reason that he came to Rome.	Hanc ob causam ille Romam venit.
--	----------------------------------

76. The use of a **noun** and **adjective** in agreement where the English has a redundant **of** should be noted.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) A watch was kept through the <b>whole of the city</b> . | Per <b>totam urbem</b> vigilatum est.      |
| (b) The <b>rest of the ships</b> were almost sunk.          | <b>Reliquae naves</b> prope demersae sunt. |

---

<sup>1</sup> Ref. to (Appendix II.), (1).

- (c) He charged into the middle of the enemy. *In medios hostes impetum fecit.*  
 (d) The top of the mountain. *Summus mons.*  
 (e) The bottom of the mountain. *Imus mons.*  
 (f) At the end of the speech. *In extrema oratione.*  
 (g) The back of the paper. *Charta âversa.*

77. In English an adjective (or participle) may qualify two nouns which differ in gender. It may then in Latin either be made to agree with the **nearest** noun,

- (a) All seas and lands obey him. *Ei omnes terrae et maria parent.*  
 (b) You, Tullius, and your sister have been sufficiently praised. *Tu, Tulli, satis laudatus es atque soror tua.*  
 (c) Quarrels, abuse and <sup>1</sup> insults will be endurable. *Jurgia maledicta contumeliae tolerabiles erunt.*

78. Or (i.) in the case of persons and living things, the adjective is made plural and the masculine gender takes precedence of the feminine.

- (a) You, Tullius, and your sister have always been very kind to me. *Tu, Tulli, et soror tua semper erga me benevolentissimi fuistis.*

(ii.) In the case of inanimate things the adjectives and participles referring to them are made neuter plural.

- (b) Riches, honour and glory are by no means to be rejected. *Divitiae decus gloria minime sunt repudianda.*

Similarly if a verb has two subjects it may agree with the nearest, or else be put in the plural, with the first person taking precedence over the second, and the second over the third.

79. When two adjectives agree with the same noun it is better to connect them by **et**.

Many serious inconveniences. *Multa et magna incommoda.*

---

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix II. (7).



80. If two adjectives follow *multus* the first **et** may be omitted.

- (a) They have waged many great and important wars. *Multa magna et gravia bella gesserunt.*
- (b) Many just and due punishments. *Multa supplicia iusta et dēbita.*

81. Some adjectives are constantly used as nouns. **Amīcus**, **inimicus**, **iūvenis**, **adūlescens** and **sōcius** are very common; some are used substantivally even in the superlative degree as **amicissimus tuus**, *your dearest friend*. Any ordinary adjective may be used as a noun, but not generally in the nominative singular masculine.

- (a) The absent are present and the weak are strong. *Et absentes adsunt et imbecilli valent.*
- (b) To cut down to the quick. *Ad vivum resecare.*

82. The neuter plural of an adjective used substantively is very common in the nominative or accusative case. In the remaining cases the word **res** is generally employed.

- (a) He makes many promises, many requests. *Multa pollicetur, multa petit.*
- (He promises many things, seeks many things.)
- (b) In most things. *In plerisque rebus.*

### *Latin Proverbs.*

*Pāres cum paribus facillime congregantur.*  
 Birds of a feather flock together.  
 (Like-persons most easily associate with like.)

*Ira fūror brevis est.*  
 Anger is short madness,



## EXERCISE 12.

1. In-his-lifetime<sup>1</sup> you used-to-love him; you seem to hate [him] now-that-he-is-dead.

2. I was the last to fathom your designs; I shall be the first to oppose them.

3. We once feared we should not live; we now fear to live.

4. Epicurus believed that a good man could be happy even in bodily torture.

5. Many serious dangers are threatening the state; but while you are at the helm<sup>2</sup> we fear no shipwreck.<sup>3</sup>

6. My sister and I have always been devoted to the Muses; we shall be glad therefore to urge your brother on to higher-aims.

7. It is<sup>4</sup> not the poor but the rich who ought to bear that in mind.

8. A statesman<sup>5</sup> should make it his one aim to benefit his country.

9. You and your friends have made many attempts, [but] have accomplished little<sup>6</sup>; for my part I have reluctantly decided to resign my office.

10. Neither books, says he, nor discourses nor examples will benefit the idle; literary pursuits will foster you in your youth,<sup>7</sup> charm you in your old age<sup>7</sup> and through the whole of your life ensure you mental repose.

11. After ordering<sup>8</sup> the reserves to halt on the top of the hill, the general putting<sup>2</sup> spurs to his horse charged into the mass<sup>9</sup> of the enemy.

12. In sleep your-mind, released from bodily fetters, is able to remember the past and distinguish the present more clearly.

---

<sup>1</sup> Living (adj.).    <sup>2</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>3</sup> Put in plural.    <sup>4</sup> (75).

<sup>5</sup> Put the plural.    <sup>6</sup> Few-things.    <sup>7</sup> Use noun in apposition.

<sup>8</sup> (46).    <sup>9</sup> = into the midst of.

# CHAPTER XIII.

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

**83.** A **consecutive** clause tells as a fact the **consequence** or **result** of what is stated in the principal sentence. Such a clause in English is generally in the **indicative** or infinitive mood ; in Latin it is in the **subjunctive**, with **ut**, some **relative** pronoun, **quin** or **quominus** at the head of the clause. In the principal sentence **ita**, **tam**, **adeo**, **sic** or some case of **tantus** is generally inserted.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) I was so confused <b>that</b> I feared everything.                                 | Ita sum perturbatus <b>ut</b> omnia timerem.  |
| (b) So great a calm suddenly arose <b>that they were</b> unable to move from the spot. | Tanta subito tranquillitas exstitit <b>ut</b> se ex loco commovere <b>non possent</b> . |
| (c) Who is so foolish <b>as to do</b> this?  | Quis tam demens est <b>ut</b> hoc faciat?   |

**84.** The tense in which the subjunctive must be put depends on the **time** and **nature** of the **result**. If the English has the present tense the Latin has also. If the English has a past tense the Latin has the perfect if the result is regarded as a **single fact**, the imperfect if the result is **continuous**.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) They lived in such a way that they thought no source of gain was dishonourable. | Illi ita <b>vivebant ut</b> nullum quaestum turpem esse <b>arbitrarentur</b> . |
| (b) He was so mad that he went to the praetor.                                      | Tam demens <b>fuit ut</b> ad praetorem <b>venerit</b> .                        |

In (a) the result is a continuous action ; in (b) a single completed fact.

**85.** Negative consequence must be carefully distinguished from negative purpose.

That not in consecutive clauses is **ut non**, in final **ne**.

That no one „ „ **ut nemo**, „ **ne quis**.

That nothing „ „ **ut nihil**, „ **ne quid**.

That never „ „ **ut nunquam**, „ **ne unquam**.

That no „ „ **ut nullus**, „ **ne ullus**.

- (a) So great was the eagerness of their minds **that no one noticed** that earthquake which laid low many cities. **Tantus fuit ardor animorum ut eum motum terrae qui multas urbes prostravit nemo senserit.**

The **ut** clause is consecutive; therefore *that no one* is **ut nemo**. **Senserit** is looked on as expressing a single fact, and therefore is perfect subjunctive. The relative clause is naturally in the indicative.

- (b) I wish to name all **that no one may complain.** **Omnes nominare volo ne quis queratur.**

The **ut** clause is one of purpose; therefore *that no one* is **ne quis**.

**86.** The consecutive subjunctive is very common with a **relative** pronoun preceded by a demonstrative or interrogative, or by **nemo**, **nihil** or **nullus**.

- (a) I am not the man **to do** this. **Non is sum qui hoc faciam.**

- (b) Who is there **who does not hate** Tarquinius Superbus? **Quis est qui Tarquinium Superbum non oderit?**

- (c) Nothing shall be said by me **which seems** to be unworthy of your ears. **Nihil a me dicetur quod non dignum vestris auribus esse videatur.<sup>1</sup>**

**87.** This subjunctive is also used after **est qui**, **sunt qui**, or **erant qui** used vaguely without reference to any particular antecedent.

- (a) There is much that I think necessary to say. **Permulta sunt quae mihi dicenda esse videantur.**

- (b) There were some who said this. **Erant qui haec dicerent.**

<sup>1</sup> Cicero was very fond of ending a sentence with **esse videatur**.

88. The verb must not be put in the subjunctive after **est** **qui**, etc., if a **definite person** is meant.

There are some (indefinite) who do      *Sunt qui non habeant*, est  
not possess this, there is one      *qui non curat habere*.  
(definite) who does not care to  
possess.

89. **Ut** is not always followed by the subjunctive ; when it means *as* or *when* it is used with the **indicative**.

(a) I am a friend of his, **as** I my-      *Ego sum eius familiaris, ut*  
self confess.      *ipse fateor*.

(b) **When** he returned home he      *Ut domum rediit, haec*  
noticed this.      *animadvertit*.

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

L. Paullus consul iterum, cum ei bellum ut cum rege Perse gereret obtigisset, ut ea ipsa die domum ad vesperum rediit, filiolum suam Tertiam, quae tum erat admodum parva, osculans animadvertit tristiculam. "Quid est," inquit, "mea Tertia?" quid tristis es? "Mi pater," inquit, "Persa periit." Tum ille arctius puellam complexus, "Accipio," inquit, "mea filia, omen": erat autem mortuus catellus eo nomine.

### EXERCISE 13.

1. The river was so swollen with rains that it was dangerous to cross.<sup>1</sup>

2. Who of us is so hard-hearted as not to be moved by the death of Hannibal?

3. There are certain men whom we do not care to meet often.

4. I believe that the safety of all who have ventured<sup>2</sup> on these-enterprises is at stake.

5. There is no man so averse to literature as not to revere the name and writings of Cicero.

<sup>1</sup> = that it could be crossed not without danger.

<sup>2</sup> (18) and (82).

6. The worthy father embraced his daughter more-closely, and said he hoped that she would soon regain health.

7. He was so confused, as I readily acknowledge, that even now he is not able to understand your speech.

8. A leader clever enough to win a victory ought not to be too lazy to make-use of it.

9. It was related of Plato,<sup>1</sup> that charming writer, that when he was a child a bee settled on his lips.

10. How few there are who are able to hold the office which Cicero has resigned !

11. The charge of the cavalry<sup>2</sup> threw the ranks of the Gauls into such confusion<sup>3</sup> that they took to flight;<sup>4</sup> thereupon the Romans captured and burnt the village.

12. There were some who said that this was not true.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.—QUIN AND QUOMINUS.

**90.** A consecutive clause may modify or restrict the meaning of the principal sentence, which generally contains the adverb **ita**. If the clause is negative it may be translated by the English preposition *without* followed by a verbal noun.

(a) They gained a triumph over Mithridates, but **in such a way that**, routed and vanquished as he was, **he still was king**. **Ita** de Mithridate triumpharunt **ut** pulsus superatus-que **regnaret**.

(b) It is impossible for many men to lose their property and wealth **without dragging** more along with them into the same abyss. Non possunt multi rem ac fortunas amittere **ut non** plures secum in eandem calamitatem **trahant**.

<sup>1</sup> (16).      <sup>2</sup> (52).      <sup>3</sup> = so disordered the ranks.      <sup>4</sup> Perfect tense.

91. The consecutive clause is sometimes **substantival** and serves as subject or object.

- (a) It is possible that you think **Fieri potest ut** tu recte rightly. sentias.

**Ut recte sentias** is the subject of **potest**.

- (b) By chance it happened that he **Casu accidit ut** id primus was the first to bring news nuntiaret. of that.

- (c) It remains for us to say a few **Reliquum est (or restat) ut** words about good fortune. de felicitate pauca dicamus.

92. The **substantival** *ut*-clause and the **adverbial consecutive** are found together after the phrase **tantum abest**.

So far am I from being a hindrance  
to this that on the contrary I  
encourage you,

or

Instead of being a hindrance to  
this, on the contrary I en-  
courage you.

Tantum abest **ut** huic rei  
impedimento **sim ut**  
contra te **adhorter**.

The literal translation is *that I should be a hindrance to this is so far distant that I encourage you*. **Ut impedimento sim** is a noun clause and the subject of **abest**; **ut adhorter** is adverbial and shows the consequence of the preceding statement.

93. **Quin** (*by which not*) with the consecutive subjunctive must only be used when the principal sentence is **negative**, or virtually negative. It is found in such cases as the following:—

- (a) There was no doubt that the **Haud erat dubium quin** Romans were bringing aid sociis Romani opem ferr- to their allies. ent.

- (b) Who doubts that we shall **Quis dubitat quin eos su-** conquer them? peraturi simus?

*Who doubts* is equivalent to *no one doubts* and is virtually negative. It should be noted how the future is made consecutive.

- (c) And they were very near taking the city by storm. **Nec multum āfuit quin vi urbem caperent.**  
 (Literally, and it was not far distant but that they should take the city by storm.)
- (d) I cannot help laughing. **Facere non possum quin rideam.**
- (e) I left nothing undone to withdraw Pompeius from his intimacy with Caesar. **Nihil praetermisi quin Pompeium a Caesaris coniunctione avocarem.**

**94. Dubito** with the **infinitive** means to hesitate. There must be a negative.

He did not hesitate to say that. **Non dubitavit illa dicere.**

**95. Quin** is also used instead of **qui non** after **nemo, nihil, nullus** and words that are virtually negative.

- (a) Everybody esteems him. **Nemo est quin eum diligat.**  
 (There is no one who does not esteem him.)
- (b) Who was there who did not know this? **Quis erat quin hoc sciret?**

**96. Quin** is sometimes used in impatient questions and commands.

- (a) Withdraw the crowd from me by means of kindness on your part. **Quin<sup>1</sup> turbam a me vestris beneficiis deducitis?**
- (b) Pray attend, gentlemen of the jury. **Quin attendite, iudices.**

**97. Quōmīnus** (*by which the less*) with the subjunctive follows verbs of **hindering** or **detering**.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Quin deducitis** literally means *how do you not withdraw*, **quin** being a contraction of **qui** (an old ablative of **qui**) and **ne**.



- (a) Nor will he **prevent** me from **supporting** your rights.      Neque me **impediat** quominus vestrum ius **defendam**.
- (b) I will make no **objection** to all **reading** my writings.      Non **recusabo**<sup>1</sup> quominus omnes mea scripta **legant**.
- (c) What **prevented** you from **being** happy?      Quid **obstabat** quominus **esses** beatus?

Obs.—Obsto may have dative of the person as object.

*Latin Proverbs.*

Est modus in rebus.

There is a mean in all things.

Fūrem fur cognoscit.

Set a thief to catch a thief.

(A thief recognises a thief.)

EXERCISE 14.

1. I cannot help fearing that you are never likely-to-help<sup>2</sup>-me.
2. The centurions drew their swords<sup>3</sup> and prevented the legate from leaving the camp.
3. Instead of helping me you are a hindrance to my plans.
4. Most of you know that Pompeius has returned to Italy : who has any doubt<sup>4</sup> that he will resign his command?
5. You cannot acquit the defendant without condemning those who have attempted to ruin him.
6. The city was very nearly captured by the Gauls : Caesar was not able to prevent them from crossing the river.
7. Every-one envies Pompeius : there is no doubt that foreign nations regard him as the saviour of our empire.
8. Having promised to consult your interests in this matter I shall not hesitate to keep my word.

<sup>1</sup> Recuso may also have the infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> (48).      <sup>3</sup> (57).      <sup>4</sup> = who doubts?

9. Yesterday I sent my brother, who was staying in my house, to interview Cicero: very fortunately it happened that he was at home.

10. No one has ever been so shameless as to venture silently<sup>1</sup> to pray to heaven for so many and such great blessings.<sup>2</sup>

11. Caesar decided at once to lay siege to Aquileia, which seemed to be at his mercy. For the walls were too low and the ditches too narrow to protect the people of the town. His scouts reported<sup>3</sup> that the commander, a youth of barely twenty-five, was inexperienced in war, and that the soldiers were so cowardly that they were likely to take to flight at the first onset; that no watch-was-kept by night or day; and that all, in fine, seemed to despair of safety.

## CHAPTER XV.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

98. The **relative pronoun** has the same **number, person** and **gender** as its antecedent, *but its case must suit the clause to which it belongs.*

- (a) You who understand these matters will help me.      Vos qui haec intelligitis mihi subvenietis.
- (b) I have always loved Maximus, Ego Maximum, eum qui the man who recovered Tarentum recepit, semper Tarentum.      dilexi.

OBS.—The relative and its clause should be placed as near to the antecedent as possible.

99. If the relative has two antecedents differing in gender it is made masculine plural when referring to persons and neuter plural when referring to things.

---

<sup>1</sup> (73).      <sup>2</sup> = things.      <sup>3</sup> Passive impersonal.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) You, Tullius, and your sister who have always been very kind to me.</p> <p>(b) Riches, honour and glory, which are by no means to be rejected.</p> | <p>Tu, Tulli, et soror tua <b>qui</b> semper erga me <b>benevolentissimi</b> fuistis.</p> <p>Divitiae decus gloria <b>quae</b> minime sunt <b>repudianda</b>.</p> |
|---|---|

**100.** Sometimes when the relative is subject of a verb of **incomplete predication** it agrees in gender and number with the **complement**.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) Pompeius who was the glory of the Roman empire.</p> | <p>Pompeius <b>quod</b> imperii Romani <b>decus</b> fuit.</p> |
|--|---|

The antecedent **Pompeius** is masculine, but **quod** is neuter, being influenced by the gender of the complement **decus**.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(b) Goodwill which is the source of friendship.</p> | <p>Benevolentia <b>qui</b> est amicitiae <b>fons</b>.</p> |
|--|---|

**101.** The relative is sometimes found in agreement with an implied antecedent.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>You used to say that you were satisfied with the death of us who had stayed behind.</p> | <p><b>Nostrā qui</b> remansissemus caede te contentum esse dicebas.</p> |
|--|---|

The antecedent of **qui** is **nostrum**, of **us**, which is not expressed, but implied in **nostra**.

**102.** Often the antecedent is not a single word, but the **whole idea** of the preceding sentence or clause. **Id quod** must then be used, **id** being accusative case in apposition with the sentence.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>About whom have your verdicts been so important and so honourable, <b>a thing which</b> especially creates prestige?</p> | <p>De quo homine vos, <b>id quod</b> maxime facit auctoritatem, tanta et tam praeclara iudicia fecistis?</p> |
|---|--|

**103.** If the adjective which qualifies the antecedent is **emphatic** it is often placed in the **relative** clause and made to

agree with the relative. **Superlative** adjectives and words like **unus, solus, multus, paucus** are found in this position.

- (a) He came with the strongest forces that he had. **Venit cum copiis quas firmissimas habuit.**
- (b) I will send the only slave I have. **Mittam servum quem unum habeo.**

**104.** The relative clause very often precedes the principal sentence, where there is a **contrast** to be emphasised.

- (a) Shall experienced old men dread that which youths despise? **Quod** adulescentes contemnunt, **id** docti senes extimescent?
- (b) Those who formerly hated you, to-day love you. **Qui** antea oderant, **ei** hodie te amant.

When a contrast is implied, **is**, which is the usual pronominal antecedent of **qui**, must be inserted. Otherwise it may be omitted *if it is in the same case as the relative*.

**105.** The antecedent is sometimes found in the relative clause and in the same case as the relative.

He subdued the Volsci, a nation which is close to the city. **Volscos quae gens non longe ab urbe est subegit.**

**106.** The relative is also used as a mere connecting link.

**And** when they had heard **this** they returned home. **Quae** cum audiissent domum redierunt.

Here **quae** is equivalent to **et ea**. **Et** joins the whole sentence on to what has preceded, and **ea** is the object of audiissent.

**107.** The relative pronoun generally heads its clause. Sometimes a preposition precedes it, but **propter, inter** and **contra** are often placed after the relative which they govern.

**108.** The relative pronoun **qui** must not be confused with **qui adverbial** (*how*). The latter was originally an ablative form.

**How** can life be worth living? **Qui** potest esse vita vitalis?

**Qui** with the subjunctive is discussed elsewhere (18), (62), (86 and 87), (139), (173), (307), (310), (353).

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Is victorem detractum ex equo magistrum equitum plenus maeroris atque irae trucidavit, nec multum afuit. quin corpore etiam, quia inter hostiles ceciderat turmas, Samnites potirentur. Sed extemplo ad pedes descensum ab Romanis est, coactique idem Samnites facere; et repentina acies circa corpora ducum pedestre proelium iniit, quo haud dubie superat Romanus, recuperatumque Aulii corpus mixta cum dolore laetitia victores in castra referunt.

### EXERCISE 15.

1. Those<sup>1</sup> who defended the state in their youth will not abandon it in their old age.

2. The scouts reported that the enemy were retiring across the river; and<sup>2</sup> when he heard this he did not hesitate to attack at once.

3. I wish to spare those who have deserved well of their country; but the decision lies with you.

4. He has abandoned the many faithful friends that he had in order to humour Catiline.

5. We all think that the memory of the friendship which has been the light of our life will be undying.

6. Both men and women who had assembled in-crowds on the news<sup>3</sup> of Caesar's arrival followed him as-he-turned<sup>4</sup> to the city.

7. Pliny used-to-think that all time was wasted which was not spent on literature.

8. The Aedui brought up the corn and wood which Caesar had demanded too late<sup>5</sup> to be of use to him.

9. So far<sup>6</sup> was he from repenting of his crime that he actually boasted of it.

---

<sup>1</sup> (104).      <sup>2</sup> (106).      <sup>3</sup> = Caesar's arrival having been heard.

<sup>4</sup> (45).      <sup>5</sup> (71, c).      <sup>6</sup> (92).

10. We pity the innocent, but nothing shall prevent us from punishing the guilty.

11. This is of the greatest importance to you who<sup>1</sup> are fathers as well as to your children.

12. Cicero, as<sup>2</sup> you all know, was so dismayed by the death of Pompeius that he was unwilling to return to his country; fearing to meet Caesar, against whom he had inveighed so bitterly, he retired to the province of Asia.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### CORRELATIVES.

**109.** Certain pairs of words in mutual relation to one another are called **correlatives**. One of the pair is a demonstrative, the other a relative.

#### *Demonstrative.*

**is** (*he*), **idem** (*the same*).

**tālis** (*of such a sort*).

**tantus** (*of such a size*).

**tot** (*so many*).

#### *Relative.*

**qui** (*who*).

**quālis** (*of what sort*).

**quantus** (*of what size*).

**quot** (*how many*).

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) They wish to have a friend of such a character <b>as</b> they themselves cannot be. | Talem amicum habere volunt <b>quales</b> ipsi esse non possunt. |
| (b) I gave as much money <b>as</b> he asked.  | <b>Quantum</b> pecuniae poposcit tantum dedi.                   |
| (c) There are as many opinions <b>as</b> persons.                                       | <b>Quot</b> homines tot sententiae.                             |

Just as a **qui**-clause often precedes the principal sentence (104), so a clause beginning with **quantus**, **quot** or **qualis** may be placed first. It will be seen that these words often translate the English relative *as*.

<sup>1</sup> (98. a)

<sup>2</sup> = a thing which you all know.

He is **what** (or the **same** as) he **Idem** est **qui** (or **atque**)  
was formerly. **olim** fuit.



**115.** After **alius** and words of similar meaning **ac** or **atque** must be used for *as*, not *qui*.

- (a) I am **different from what** I **Alius** sum **atque** olim fui.  
was formerly.
- (b) The case is **different** now **Alia** res nunc est **ac** tum  
**from what** it was then. fuit.

**116.** **Alius** is found in each of two co-ordinate clauses to express a distinction.

- (a) **Some** take their arms, **others** **Alii** arma capiunt, **alii** suos  
call upon their men. convocant.
- (b) It is **one** thing to abuse, **an-** **Aliud** est maledicere, **aliud**  
**other** to accuse. accusare.

The adverbs **alias . . . alias** (*on one occasion . . . on another occasion*) and **aliter . . . aliter** (*in one way . . . in another way*) are similarly used.

- (c) We live **in one way** with a **Aliter** cum tyranno, **aliter**  
tyrant, **in another** with a cum amico vivitur.  
friend.

**117.** **Alius** means *one out of many*, **alter** *one out of two*.

**One** was priest, **the other** augur. **Alter** pontifex, **alter** augur  
erat.

**118.** **Alius** and **alter** are sometimes repeated in the same sentence.

- (a) **Different** people praise **differ-** **Alii alia** laudant.  
**ent** things.
- (b) **The one** will do everything **Alter pro altero** omnia  
**for the other.** faciet.

**119.** Some conjunctions are called correlative, as **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*; **sive . . . sive**, *whether . . . or*.

*Latin Proverbs.*

Satis est quod sufficit.

Enough is as good as a feast.

(That which suffices is enough.)

Qualis hēra, tales ancillae.

Like master, like man.

(Of what sort is the mistress, of such a sort are the maids.)

## EXERCISE 16.

1. We shall be compelled to do the same as our ancestors.
2. He said that he was no longer what<sup>1</sup> he had been.
3. Catiline's aims are different to yours; he favours the democrats, you the senate.
4. Jugurtha, perceiving that he would be beaten, withdrew his forces.
5. Let them strive as much as they like, they shall not succeed.<sup>2</sup>
6. The consuls of that year had perished, one by disease and the other by the sword.
7. Horseman after horseman<sup>3</sup> was sent on to announce the approach<sup>4</sup> of the enemy.
8. The loyalty of our allies is not what it was before; there is no doubt that it began to waver after this defeat.
9. As often as I make a speech in the senate, I seem to myself to undergo a test both of my capacities and moral-worth.
10. The soldier very nearly<sup>5</sup> dragged the general from his horse while-he-was-urging<sup>6</sup> on his men and rallying the disordered ranks.
11. It is clear that war will soon break out: I will return therefore to the place<sup>7</sup> from which I came.

---

<sup>1</sup> = the same as.      <sup>2</sup> = the affair will turn out badly.

<sup>3</sup> = a horseman, one upon another.      <sup>4</sup> = that the enemy approach.

<sup>5</sup> (93, c).      <sup>6</sup> Use participle.      <sup>7</sup> = thither whence.

12. Some think that the war will soon be over, others hope that Pompeius will not return before the end of the summer. For my part, I agree with the latter. Mithridates has escaped <sup>1</sup> from our hands and fled from his kingdom, and <sup>2</sup> it is said that Tigranes, the king of Armenia, has received him <sup>2</sup> in his distress. More nations, moved by compassion and fanaticism, are taking up arms against us, and so though-conquered he is able to accomplish more <sup>3</sup> than he ever ventured to pray for when-victorious. Under these circumstances, it is quite impossible for the general, to whom alone we wish to entrust the fortunes of Rome,<sup>4</sup> to leave Asia.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### DIRECT QUESTIONS.—DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**120.** The order of the words in a Latin sentence would not by itself indicate that a question was intended, so that it is necessary to have some interrogative word or particle at the beginning of the sentence. We can employ for this purpose,

(i.) An interrogative **particle**<sup>5</sup>; **num** is used when a negative answer is expected.

(a) Do we then sin?

**Num igitur peccamus?**

or

We do not then sin, do we?

The English *no* in answer to such a question would be translated by **non**, **minime**, **nēquāquam** or by **repeating** the verb in the **negative** as **non peccamus**, we do not sin.

(b) Do we then sin? **No, indeed.** **Num igitur peccamus? minime nos quidem.**

<sup>1</sup> Use participle.      <sup>2</sup> and him = whom.

<sup>3</sup> = so much as he never dared.      <sup>4</sup> = of the Roman people.

<sup>5</sup> The interrogative particle is sometimes omitted by Latin authors. The tone of the speaker would show that his words were interrogative.

**Nonne** is used when an affirmative answer is implied. The answer would be **etiam, ita v̄ero, s̄anē**, or the verb would be repeated in the affirmative.

(c) Are we not sinning? He **Nonne** peccamus? Respondit "**etiam**".  
answered **yes**.

If there is no indication of the character of the answer expected **-nē** is the correct particle. This particle cannot stand first, but is joined to the first word of the sentence, and emphasises that word.

(d) Do you say this? **Tune** hoc dicis?  
or

Is it you who say this?

**121.** (ii.) An interrogative pronoun as **quis, who**; **quisnam, who pray**; **ecquis, is there anybody**; **uter, which of the two**.

(a) Who is coming? **Quis** venit?  
(b) What more do you want? **Quid** vultis amplius?  
(c) Is there any one in the house? **Ecquis** in aedibus est?

**122.** The indefinite pronoun **quis** is used for *any* in questions after **num.** (Cf. 250.)

Does any one ask? **Num quis** rogat?

**123.** (iii.) An interrogative adjective as **qui, what** or *which*; **quantus, how great**; **quālis, of what sort**; **quot, how many**; **quōtus, of what number**.

(a) What danger scares you? **Quod** periculum vos terret?  
(b) Of what kind is that speech of yours? **Qualis** est ista oratio?  
(c) How many of you are there? **Quot** estis?  
(d) What o'clock is it? **Quota** hora est?

**124.** (iv.) An interrogative adverb as **cur, why**; **quam, how** (with adverbs and adjectives); **quomodo** and **quemadmodum, how**; **quando, when**; **quo, whither**; **unde, whence**; **ubi, where**; **quōties, how many times**.

- (a) When shall I see you? **Quando**<sup>1</sup> te aspiciam?
- (b) Whither are you rushing? **Quo** ruitis?
- (c) To what point, pray, will you take advantage of our forbearance? **Quo usque tandem**<sup>2</sup> patientiā nostrā abutēre?

**125.** The **deliberative** subjunctive is used in questions implying consideration of the course to be pursued.

- (a) What am I to do? whither am I to turn? **Quid faciam?** quo me **vertam?**
- (b) Am I not to love this man? **Hunc ego non diligam?**

Such questions are rhetorical, *i.e.*, they are not really asked for information, and do not expect an answer.

**126.** A question is called **alternative** when a choice between two things is given, as *Are you going or not?* In this case **utrum** or **-nē** is used with the first, **an** with the second of the two alternatives. If the latter is negative, **an non** must be used.

- (a) Do you regard me as an enemy or a friend? **Utrum** me pro inimico **an** pro amico habes?
- (b) Are you coming to Rome or not? **Romamne** venis **an non?**

\*.\* **Vel** or **aut** cannot be used in any kind of question.

**127.** **An** is occasionally found where no alternative seems to be given.

- Do you not indeed know that the harbour of Caieta has been ravaged by the pirates? **An** vero ignoratis portum Caietae a praedonibus esse direptum?

**An** here introduces the alternative to an implied **utrum**-clause. *Is it so or do you not know etc.?*

<sup>1</sup> **Cum** must not be used for the interrogative *when*.

<sup>2</sup> **Tandem** is used in this sense in impatient questions and commands.

*Latin Proverbs.*

Optimum condimentum (est) fames.

Hunger is the best sauce.

Bis dat qui cito dat.

He gives twice who gives quickly.

## EXERCISE 17.

1. Will any one venture to deny that Catiline pretended to be ill?

2. Is my brother within? He has returned home, has he not? Why has the house been surrounded by a ring of armed men? What crime has he committed?

3. How many of you have committed to memory what the master taught you?

4. How comes it that all men know our plans?

5. Was it Caesar, said he, or Pompeius who deserved better of his country?

6. Do you say that you were the first<sup>1</sup> to visit the beautiful island of Rhodes? No, I do not.

7. What was I to do? Where was I to turn? Could I have prevented him from returning to the camp?

8. How do you do, my friend? I hoped to meet you to-day.

9. Can you not govern your tongue for a single hour?

10. How long will you trust that fellow? It is clear nevertheless that you are now ashamed of your folly.

11. Joking apart,<sup>2</sup> what am I to reply? Everybody will acknowledge that you have made many attempts, but you seem to have accomplished little.

12. Was it in his youth or his old age that he made his will? I can hardly believe that the son has done what the father really wished.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> (74).      <sup>2</sup> = Jests having been dropped.      <sup>3</sup> (18).

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## INDIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**128.** In such a sentence as *I asked whether he was coming* the subordinate clause is called an **indirect** or dependent question. The actual words of inquiry used by the speaker would be *Is he coming?* When this question is reported, it becomes a subordinate **noun**-clause, and is the **object** of the principal verb. The verb in such dependent clauses must be in the **subjunctive**.

(a) I asked **whether** he was coming. Rogavi **num veniret**.

It is the interrogative *whether* which shows that *he was coming* is a question. **The principal verb is not bound to be one of asking.** Many other verbs are used with dependent questions. The **interrogative** word which introduces the clause denotes that it is a question.

(b) I understand **what** faithful friends he had. Quos fidos amicos habuerit intellego.

The interrogative adjective *what* shows that the subordinate clause is an indirect **question**. Contrast this with

(c) I understand **that** he had faithful friends. Eum fidos amicos habuisse intellego.

Here there is no interrogative word. The *that*-clause is an indirect **statement** and therefore is rendered by the accusative and infinitive.

**129.** In an indirect question the interrogative particles **-ne**, **num** and **nonne** will translate the English *whether* or *if*, but it must be noted that **num** then does not necessarily expect a negative answer.

(a) Tell me { **whether** } you are Dic mihi **num** sis incolumis.  
                  { **if** }  
                  unhurt.

The *if*-clause in this example is not a supposition, but a noun-clause, and so *if* must not be translated by **si**. The answer to this question might be in the affirmative



- (b) You ask me **whether** a dog is not like a wolf. Me rogas **nonne** canis lupo similis sit.

**130.** The interrogative adjectives, pronouns and adverbs mentioned in the previous chapter on direct questions are equally common with indirect questions.

- (a) I understand **how great** is the force of friendship. **Quanta** vis amicitiae **sit** intellego.  
 (b) What reason is there **why we** should eliminate friendship from life? **Quae causa** est **cur** amicitiam e vita **tollamus**?

**131.** The sequence of the tenses in this construction is as usual—primary tenses follow primary and historic follow historic, except that the **perfect subjunctive** is often used after a **historic tense** to denote a **simple fact**<sup>1</sup> in past time.

- (a) I ask what you are doing. Rogo quid facias.  
 (b) I ask what you did. Rogo quid feceris.  
 (c) I ask when you will go. Rogo quando iturus sis.  
 (d) I asked what you were doing. Rogavi quid faceres.  
 (e) I asked what you did. **Rogavi quid feceris.**  
 (f) I asked when you would go. Rogavi quando iturus esses.

**132.** **Haud scio an** and **nescio an**, *I am inclined to think (= probably)*; **incertum an**, *it is uncertain whether*; and **forsitan**, *there may be a chance that (= perhaps)*, take the subjunctive.

- (a) **Probably** no period of life can be happier. **Haud scio an** nulla<sup>2</sup> aetas beatior **possit** esse.  
 (b) **Perhaps** some one may say that you are mad. **Forsitan** aliquis **dicat** te insanire.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. (84).

<sup>2</sup> If **haud scio an** (or **nescio an**) is translated literally, *I do not know whether*, it will be seen that the dependent clause is negative when the English is affirmative, and *vice versa*.

**133. Nescio quis**, *some one or other* ; **nescio quid**, *something or other* ; **nescio quo modo** and **nescio quo pacto**, *somehow*, are counted as one word and do **not** take the subjunctive.

- (a) He is bringing somebody or Nescio quem secum **ducit**.  
other with him.
- (b) This speech somehow or other Haec oratio nescio quo pacto  
seems to have pleased you. tibi placuisse **videtur**.

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Itaque non sum praedicaturus quantas ille res domi militiae terra marique, quantaque felicitate gesserit, ut eius semper voluntatibus non modo cives adsenserint, socii obtemperarint, hostes oboedierint, sed etiam venti tempestatesque obsecundarint ; hoc brevissime dicam neminem unquam tam impudentem fuisse, qui ab dis immortalibus tot et tantas res tacitus auderet optare, quot et quantas di immortales ad Pompeium detulērunt.

### EXERCISE 18.

1. When did you think you saw him ?
2. He told us when he thought he saw him.
3. When I asked <sup>1</sup> you what you were doing, you made no reply.
4. You cannot judge which of the two brothers your father favours.
5. I asked him did he believe me on my oath ? <sup>2</sup> he said "no".
6. He will ask you what crime Catiline is about to commit ; I hope that you will reply satisfactorily.
7. Who knows whether he will see to-morrow's <sup>3</sup> sun in safety ? <sup>4</sup>
8. Count how many there are of yourselves, <sup>5</sup> how many opponents you have.

---

<sup>1</sup>(47).    <sup>2</sup> = having sworn.    <sup>3</sup>(72).    <sup>4</sup>(73).    <sup>5</sup>(123, c).

9. Tell me the character<sup>1</sup> of your friends and I will tell you yours.

10. You will easily understand how<sup>2</sup> hated Hannibal was by the Romans.

11. He says that somebody or other has threatened him with death: probably he is out of his mind.

12. Valerius, being asked why he had broken the law, replied that the law itself was opposed to justice.

13. It is difficult to understand<sup>3</sup> how it happens that so few are content with their lot, and make it their business to enjoy life wisely.

14. The authorities vary so, as to the strength<sup>4</sup> and character of his forces, that I have scarcely ventured to assert that he will be victorious.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### INDIRECT QUESTION—*Continued.*

**134.** Two interrogatives are sometimes found in one clause.

- (a) We ought to enquire which Quærerere debemus **uter utri**  
laid an ambush for the other. insidias fecerit.  
(Literally, which laid an ambush for  
which.)

- (b) The question arises as to which Ambigitur **uter utro** sit  
is superior to the other. prior.

- (c) What shall I prefer to what? **Quæ quibus** anteferam?

**135.** To translate *whether . . . or* in alternative indirect questions, **utrum . . . an** or **-nē . . . an** are employed. If the second clause is negative, **necne** (*or not*) must be used, **an non** being confined to direct questions.

<sup>1</sup> = of what sort your friends are. <sup>2</sup> (40, d).

<sup>3</sup> Use supine (177). <sup>4</sup> = of what size and of what sort his forces are.

- (a) I asked **whether** you regarded me as an enemy **or** a friend. Rogavi **utrum** me pro inimico **an** pro amico **haberes**.
- (b) He asked whether you were coming to Rome **or not**. Romamne **venires necne** quaesivit.

**136.** The **utrum** and **-ne** are sometimes omitted from the first alternative.

The question before the court is not whether he was killed, which we acknowledge, but whether he was killed justly or unjustly. Non illud iam in iudicium venit occisusne sit, quod fatemur, sed iure **an** iniuria.

**Utrum** is understood before **iure**.

**137.** *Whether . . . or* are also used in English in adverbial sentences to express an alternative **condition**. They must then be translated by **sive . . . sive**, or **seu . . . seu**.

- (a) **Whether** I wish it **or not**, I am bound to return. **Sive volo sive nolo** redire debeo.

*Whether I wish it or not* is an adverbial clause. It cannot be an indirect question, an object clause, because *return* is intransitive and has no object. So **utrum . . . an** would be wrong.

- (b) **Tell me whether** you wish it **or do not wish it**. **Dic mihi utrum velis an nolis**.

*Whether you wish it or do not* is a noun-clause and the object of *tell*: it is then an indirect question and **utrum . . . an** must be used.

**138.** The indirect question may also be a **subjective** clause.

- (a) It makes no difference whether I grieve or not. **Doleam necne doleam nihil interest**.

The clause **doleam necne doleam** is the subject of **interest**.

- (b) It is extraordinary what an anxiety has come over me. **Incrēdibile est quanta me sollicitudo affecerit**.

**139.** A clause which is strictly subordinate to an indirect question must have its verb in the **subjunctive**.

- (a) He asked whether I had read the book **which** he **had** given me. Rogavit num librum legissem **quem** mihi **dedisset**.

The actual words of inquiry would have been *Have you read the book which I gave you?* and therefore the relative clause is part of the question, and the subjunctive is the mood required.

- (b) We asked whether he **despaired** of the valour of the soldiers **whom** he **had** so often **praised**. Rogavimus num desperaret de virtute militum **quos** toties **laudavisset**.

**140.** But if the subordinate clause is not part of the question but is merely inserted in parenthesis as an explanation, then it will remain in the indicative. **Quod fatemur** in (136) is an example of this.

**141. Ut** is found in questions with the meaning *how*.

- (a) You see **how** old age is not feeble. Videtis **ut** senectus languida non **sit**.

Contrast this with:—

- (b) You see **that** old age is not feeble. Videtis **senectutem** languidam non **esse**.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Nescit quot digitos habeat in manu.

He does not know how many beans make five.

(He does not know how many fingers he has on his hand.)

In ignem incidi, fumum fugiens.

Out of the frying-pan, into the fire.

(I fell into the fire, avoiding the smoke.)

### EXERCISE 19.

1. The real question<sup>1</sup> is which<sup>2</sup> lay in wait for the other.
2. It is a matter of great importance to me<sup>3</sup> whether you join the democrats or the patriotic party.

---

<sup>1</sup> = It is really questioned.      <sup>2</sup> (134).      <sup>3</sup> (37).

3. The judge asked whether your supporters were present.  
4. He gave no answer when I asked what he meant to do.  
5. Whether<sup>1</sup> this is true or false, it is extraordinary how willingly his friends helped him.  
6. I do not hesitate to say that our friendship, which<sup>2</sup> has been the only tie between us, will be an example to posterity.  
7. You seem clearly to understand what my opinions<sup>3</sup> and objects are; why then do you oppose me?  
8. Whether he was killed justly or unjustly I know not; there was no doubt that his life was such that he thought no gain dishonourable.  
9. I wonder very much what it was that prevented him from coming.  
10. You ask me how the slave was able to accomplish this without the knowledge<sup>4</sup> or orders of his master.  
11. It is hard to say whether you will convince the jury or not; you know what my own opinion is.  
12. A certain philosopher was asked whether he did not think that the famous Valerius, who was then at the head of affairs, was happy. "I don't know," said he, "for I have never had a conversation with him."<sup>5</sup>  
"Cannot you say then what your opinion is?"  
"No."  
"To take<sup>6</sup> another instance, are you unable even<sup>7</sup> in the case of the emperor to say whether he is happy?"  
"I cannot say, since I do not know how learned he is or how virtuous."  
"What! do you think happiness consists in that?"  
"I think that the good are happy, the bad unhappy."

---

<sup>1</sup> (137).    <sup>2</sup> (100).    <sup>3</sup> = what I feel and follow.

<sup>4</sup> = the master not knowing (abl. abs.).

<sup>5</sup> A certain . . . him must be put in one complex sentence.

<sup>6</sup> (64).    <sup>7</sup> = not even able.

## CHAPTER XX.

## THE GENITIVE.

**142.** The **genitive** is used both with nouns and verbs. In the former case it serves to define or describe the noun on which it depends. There are the following varieties :—

**143.** (i.) The genitive of **definition**.

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) The household of the Scipios. | Familia <b>Scīpionum</b> .   |
| (b) The word pleasure.            | Vox <b>voluptatis</b> .      |
| (c) The term Germany.             | Vocābulum <b>Germaniae</b> . |

It will be seen in (b) and (c) that the English has apposition but the Latin not. In *urbs Roma, the city of Rome*, we have the converse of this. This genitive of definition is also called appositional.

**144.** (ii.) The genitive of **quality** or **description**. An adjective of some sort is always found with this genitive, which is sufficiently explained by its name.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) They accepted the bowl which<br>was of least weight. | Pateram quae <b>ponderis mi-</b><br><b>nimi</b> fuit acceperunt. |
| (b) Men of great valour.                                 | Homines <b>magnae virtutis</b> .                                 |

**145.** (iii.) The **possessive** genitive, like an adjective, may be either attributive (a) and (b) or predicative (c).

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) The lustre of your power.                 | <b>Imperii vestri</b> splendor.             |
| (b) I am going to Caesar's gardens.           | Ad <b>Caesaris</b> hortos eo.               |
| (c) These gardens are said to be<br>Caesar's. | Hi horti dicuntur esse<br><b>Caesaris</b> . |

**146.** (iv.) The genitive without a noun is often used with the verb **sum** where in English such a word as *mark, character duty, part* is found.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) It is therefore the duty of an ex-<br>perienced man to check the<br>impulse of kindness. | Est igitur <b>prudētis</b> sus-<br>tinere impetum benevol-<br>entiae. |
|--|---|



- (b) Envy of one's friends **betokens a little mind.** **Parvi animi est amicis invidere.**

(Literally, it is the mark of a little mind to envy one's friends.)

- (c) It is **incumbent on a philosopher** to observe these two principles in friendship. **Sapientis est** haec duo tenere in amicitia.

- (d) To say this is **foolish.** **Stulti est** haec dicere.

It will be noticed that the substantival infinitive appears in all these examples. It is really the subject of **est** and the word in the genitive is the complement.

#### 147. (v.) The **objective** genitive.

- (a) The hope **of peace.** **Spes pacis.**

**Peace** is the object of our hopes. In **Caesaris horti**, **Caesaris** is a **subjective** genitive because the meaning is *the gardens which Caesar has*.

- (b) The love **of God.** **Amor Dei.**

If this means *the love God has for us* the genitive is **subjective**; if it means *the love we have for God* it is **objective**.

**148.** This **objective** genitive is also found with adjectives signifying **desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation** and the **opposites** of these, and certain participles used as adjectives, such as **āvidus**, *greedy*, **nescius**, *ignorant*, **insuētus**, *unaccustomed to*, and **pātiens**, *patient*.

- (a) You have always been **covetous of renown** and **greedy for praise.** **Semper appetentes gloriae atque avidi laudis fuistis.**

- (b) He is **able to endure** fasting. **Patiens inediae est.**

- (c) Men **unaccustomed to toil** and **inexperienced in our ways.** **Homines insueti laboris et consuetudinis nostrae imperitissimi.**

- (d) He ought to have **no share of that glory.** **Illius gloriae expers esse debet.**

**149.** (vi.) When the genitive denotes a whole from which a part is taken it is called the **partitive** genitive.

A great part **of the Gauls.**      *Magna pars Gallorum.*

It is especially common after certain neuter adjectives and pronouns, and the words **nihil, satis, pārū.**

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Much <b>money.</b>                                   | <i>Multum pecuniae.</i>           |
| (b) How much <b>money?</b>                               | <i>Quantum pecuniae?</i>          |
| (c) He wishes no <b>new</b> precedent to be established. | <i>Nihil novi constitui vult.</i> |

(Literally, nothing of new.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (d) More <b>men</b> were taken than slain.                              | <i>Plus capitur hominum quam caeditur.</i>                            |
| (e) Something <b>good.</b>  | <i>Aliquid boni.</i>  |
| (f) Catiline had but little <b>wisdom.</b>                              | <i>Catilinae erat parum sapientiae.</i>                               |
| (g) The Carthaginians filled <b>all the road</b> between the two camps. | <i>Poeni quod viae erat inter bina<sup>1</sup> castra complevere.</i> |

(Literally, what of road there was.)

**150.** These neuter pronouns and adjectives with the partitive genitive can only be thus used when in the **nominative** or **accusative** case.

The partitive genitive again is not used in the case of **third declension** adjectives ending in **-is**. So we must say **nihil grave** (*nothing serious*), not *nihil gravis*.

The partitive genitive is not admissible where *no part* is taken.

- |                                   |                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| (a) All <b>of us.</b>             | <i>Nos omnes.</i> |
| (b) The whole <b>of the city.</b> | <i>Tota urbs.</i> |

Other cases where the partitive is not employed have been explained in (76).

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. (296).



5. The consul, a man of the greatest resolution, said at the end of his speech that, as far as the war was concerned, there seemed to him to be more threats than danger.

6. The name friendship has some charm<sup>1</sup> even to those who are but-little fitted for it.

7. After having taken and plundered the camp, Hannibal laid waste all the country between the city of Aquileia and the river Po with fire and sword, in order to<sup>2</sup> provoke our general the more.

8. Your worthy father thinks he has sufficient eloquence to persuade the jury of this.

9. It is not every one<sup>3</sup> who can face danger with calmness.

10. I was afraid lest any innovation should be made contrary to the precedents and customs of our ancestors.

11. The soldiers, recruits with no experience<sup>4</sup> of military tactics and unaccustomed to toil, were unable to make use of their victory.

12. Whatever influence I possess<sup>5</sup> I will assuredly make use of, in order that we may be able to guarantee the safety of all our allies.

13. The mention<sup>6</sup> of Catiline's name affords sufficient proof that what you have said is true.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE GENITIVE—*Continued.*

**153.** Verbs of **accusing**, **acquitting**, etc., take an accusative of the person and a **genitive** of the crime.

(a) He has been convicted of **Māiestatis** *condemnatus* est. **treason.**

<sup>1</sup> = something of agreeable.    <sup>2</sup> (63).    <sup>3</sup> (146).    <sup>4</sup> Use adjective.

<sup>5</sup> = there is in me.    <sup>6</sup> = Catiline having been named (52).

(b) All accuse him **of theft.** **Furti omnes eum incusant.**  
**154.** The charge may also be expressed in other ways.

(a) He was accused **of assassi-** **Inter sīcārios accusatus est.**  
**nation.**

(b) Servilius was neither acquitted **Neque absolutus est neque**  
 nor convicted **of extortion.** **damnatus Servilius de pe-**  
**cuniis repetundis.**

**155.** The punishment except in the case of the word **capitis** is denoted by the **ablative.**

(a) Acquitted on the capital charge, **Capitis absolutus, pecunia**  
 he was punished by a fine. **multatus est.**

(b) Balbus was condemned **to** Balbus **capitis damnatus**  
**death.** **est.**

**156.** Verbs and adjectives implying **want** or **plenty** sometimes have the **genitive** (often the **ablative**) (195).

(a) He has little need of your **Minime tui consilii indiget.**  
 counsel.

(b) The harbour was very full of **Portus erat plenissimus**  
 ships. **navium.**

**157.** Verbs of **remembering** (except **recordor** which governs the accusative), **forgetting**, **pitying** (except **miseror** which governs the accusative) have an object in the **genitive.**

(a) I **remember the living** and **Vivorum memini nectamen**  
 do not **forget the dead.** **mortuorum obliviscor.**

(b) You ought to have **pity on** **Sociorum misereri debes.**  
 our allies.

**158.** The genitives of **value**—**magni, pluris, plurimi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti** and **nihili**—are used to modify verbs of valuing; and **tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris** to express **indefinite price** with verbs of buying and selling.

(a) He **valued** Tiberius Gracchus **Tanti Tiberium Gracchum**  
**so highly.** **fecit.**

- (b) Every man will be valued by his friends **at the rate at which** he values himself. **Quanti** quisque se ipse facit, **tanti** fiet ab amicis.
- (c) We do not allow these nations to plant vines in order that our vineyards may be worth more. Has gentes vitem serere non sinimus quo **pluris** sint nostrae vineae.
- (d) **At what price** was it bought? **Quanti** emptum est?
- (e) **It is worth while** undergoing such a storm of odium. **Est tanti** huius invidiae tempestatem subire.

**159. Interest** and **rēfert**<sup>1</sup> may be modified by these genitives of value **magni, tanti, pluris, parvi** and **mīnōris** as well as by an adverb, a neuter adjective or a pronoun used adverbially.

- (a) He thought **it was most important** to him that I should return. **Magni** suā **interesse** putabat ut redirem.
- (b) It does not **concern** any one more than it does you. Hoc **magis** nullius **interest** quam tuā.
- (c) **What does it matter** to me where you have come from? **Quid** mea **refert** unde venis?
- (d) **It is of the greatest importance** to every one that there should be peace. Omnium **maxime interest** pacem esse.
- (e) It is important for you that I should be well. Tuā **interest** ut valeam.

For genitive with other impersonals see (34).

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Vitae vero instituta sic distant ut Crētes et Aetōli latrocinari honestum putent, Lacedaemōnii suos omnes agros esse dictitarint quos spiculo possent attingere. Athenienses iurare etiam publice solebant omnem suam esse terram, quae oleam frugesve

<sup>1</sup> (37) and (138).



ferret: Galli turpe esse ducunt frumentum manu quaerere, itaque armati alienos agros demetunt; nos vero iustissimi homines, qui Transalpinas gentes oleam et vitem serere non sinimus, quo pluris sint nostra Oliveta nostraeque vineae.

### EXERCISE 21.

1. Will you not tell me for how much you sold the house?
2. I do not care whether he returns or not.
3. My sister and I are well; I hope that you also are well.
4. I will never forget those who helped me in my distress.
5. The jury cannot find guilty of treason a prisoner arraigned for murder.

6. Few were found to blame<sup>1</sup> the king, and many to praise him.

7. It is of great interest to your parents that you should be diligent.

8. Tell me whether it is true that you condemned innocent men to death.

9. It makes a great deal of difference to me whether Caesar lives or not, none to Cicero.

10. We do not allow the Gauls to plant vines, in order that we may sell the produce of our vineyards at a higher rate.

11. Men-like Cato<sup>2</sup> think lightly of all perils of death, all bodily tortures.

12. You have charged me with treachery in order to seem bolder than Catiline; I indeed wonder that you do not dread the fate of those whose<sup>3</sup> deeds you are copying.

13. The judges, men of the greatest fairness, took pity<sup>4</sup> on the defendant, and said<sup>4</sup> that it was impossible to convict of extortion one who<sup>5</sup> had been the saviour of his country.

---

<sup>1</sup> (87).    <sup>2</sup> = the Catos.    <sup>3</sup> (51).    <sup>4</sup> (19).    <sup>5</sup> (18).



## CHAPTER XXII.

### COMMANDS AND WISHES.

**160.** A command in the second person may be expressed by the **imperative**.

- (a) **Depart** at length from the city; **Egredere** aliquando ex urbe;  
the gates are open; **begone.** patent portae; **proficis-**  
**cere.**
- (b) **You must know** that this **Scitote** hoc oppidum pueris  
town has been handed over esse traditum.  
to the boys.

**161.** If the command is **negative**, **ne** with the **perfect subjunctive** is sometimes used.

- (a) **Do not do this.** Hoc **ne feceris.**  
But the more usual way is to employ the imperative of **nōlo**  
with the **infinitive**.
- (b) **Do not think**, judges, that he **Nolite putare**, iudices, eum  
is innocent. esse innocentem.

**162.** **Nēve** or **neu** is used to connect two negative commands if the first has **nē**.

Do not do this **or** attempt it. Hoc **ne feceris neve** tentaveris.

**163.** A **command** or **prohibition** in the first or third person is rendered by the **jussive** subjunctive.

- (a) **Let us return** to the country. Rus **redeamus.**
- (b) **Let us not hesitate** to say **Ne dubitemus** hoc dicere.  
this.
- (c) **Let him not fear** the enemy. **Ne** hostes **metuat.**

**164.** The subjunctive is also used to indicate a **wish**. If the wish is one that **possibly** may be fulfilled, the **present** subjunctive with or without **ūtīnam** is employed. If the wish is negative **ne** must be used.

(a) **May** my countrymen **be** happy. Cives **sint** beati.

(b) **O that** you **were** here! Utinam adsis!

If the wish **cannot possibly** be fulfilled then the **imperfect** or **pluperfect** subjunctive with **utinam** is required.

(c) I only wish you had such a **Utinam** tantam copiam virorum fortium **haberetis**.  
supply of brave men.

(d) O that he had not been present! **Utinam ne adfuisset**.

(But he was present, so the wish is vain.)

**165.** The future perfect of **video** may denote the **postponement** of the consideration of a question.

(a) How far I am right **is for** Quam id recte faciam **vid-**  
**philosophers to consider.** **erint sapientes.**

(b) What the reason was **is for** Quae fuerit causa, tu **vid-**  
**you to consider.** **eris.**

**166.** There are many English words derived from Latin words which in course of time have acquired a meaning differing from the Latin original. The following are the most common.

Acquiro = *I procure in addition.* I acquire = adipiscor.

Acta = *records.* Acts = *facta.*

Adorno = *I prepare or furnish.* I adorn = orno.

Crimen = *an accusation.* A crime = *facinus, scelus or flāgitium.*

Curo = *I take care.* I cure = sano.

Famosus = *notorious.* Famous = *praeclarus.*

Fatalis = *destined, fateful.* Fatal = *mortifer (a fatal blow).*

Honestus = *honourable.* Honest = *prōbus, simplex.*

Iniuria = *injustice.* Injury = *detrīmentum, damnum.*

Natio = *an uncivilised tribe.* Nation = *gens.*

Obtineo = *I maintain.* I obtain = *adipiscor.*

Occupo = *I seize on.* I occupy = *teneo.*

Percipio	= <i>I reap or gather.</i>	<i>I perceive</i>	= intellego.
Recipio	= <i>I regain.</i>	<i>I receive</i>	= accipio.
Sēcurus	= <i>exempt from care.</i>	<i>Secure</i>	= tutus.
Vilis	= <i>cheap.</i>	<i>Vile</i>	= turpis, dishonest.

### EXERCISE 22.

1. Let us draw our swords and prevent the consul from leaving the town.

2. Let them strive as much as they can; they will soon be glad<sup>1</sup> to acknowledge that they have accomplished little.

3. Tell me the reason-why you were distrusted<sup>2</sup> by the king.

4. Do not seek-to-learn why it is that the king does not favour your cause.

5. It is for the wise to consider<sup>3</sup> whether Caesar was killed justly or unjustly; do not acquit or condemn his murderers unheard.

6. The general said that it was not in mortals<sup>4</sup> to resist such temptations as these.<sup>5</sup>

7. Do not doubt that many serious dangers are threatening the state.

8. Let us hasten to our friends at Rome,<sup>6</sup> that in our old age we may at length obtain mental repose.

9. Would that I had been<sup>7</sup> with you at that time of danger<sup>8</sup>!

10. Would that I had died before that I had seen the city burnt and the temples plundered by the enemy!

11. Do not say that you will abandon Pompeius; remember, pray,<sup>9</sup> how he saved the city, how honourable his whole life has been, how many times he has faced death on behalf of his country. At the age of twenty-five he had attained to such

<sup>1</sup> (74).    <sup>2</sup> Turn into active.    <sup>3</sup> (165).    <sup>4</sup> (146).

<sup>5</sup> = these so great temptations.    <sup>6</sup> = to Rome.

<sup>7</sup> = I had been present to you.

<sup>8</sup> = in (put in prep.) such a time.    <sup>9</sup> Tandem.

distinctions as none of his contemporaries ever ventured to pray for. Famous kings had flung themselves at his feet;<sup>1</sup> wealthy and flourishing nations had considered him to be worthy of the most honourable rewards. Now somebody or other accuses him of extortion. Will you, whom he has so often helped, be the first to desert him? It is for you to consider<sup>2</sup> whether Pompeius or Caesar has deserved better of his country; no one will ever convince me that this accusation is true.

### CHAPTER XXIII.

#### INDIRECT COMMANDS AND WISHES.

**167.** An infinitive in English after verbs signifying **asking, commanding, advising, striving, causing, taking care** must be rendered in Latin by a **subjunctive** with **ut** or, if negative, with **ne**. Such a subordinate clause is substantival.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) He asked them <b>to undertake</b><br>the business.                  | Ab eis petivit <sup>3</sup> <b>ut</b> negotium<br><b>susciperent.</b> |
| (b) They exhort us <b>to be calm.</b>                                   | Hortantur <b>ut</b> aequo animo<br><b>simus.</b>                      |
| (c) I persuaded the father <b>not to</b><br><b>pay</b> his son's debts. | Patri persuasi <b>ne</b> aes alienum<br>filii <b>dissolveret.</b>     |
| (d) He will order the soldiers <b>not</b><br><b>to do that.</b>         | Militibus <b>ne</b> id <b>faciant</b> im-<br>perabit.                 |

With regard to sequence of tense primary follows primary and historic historic.

**168.** *Iūbeo*, *I order*, and *cōnor*, *I attempt*, are exceptions and take an **infinitive** construction.

They **attempt to cross** the river. Flumen **transire conantur.**

<sup>1</sup> (41).      <sup>2</sup> (165).

<sup>3</sup> Peto = I ask as a right. Rogo = I ask as a favour.

169. A second clause, if negative, has **neve** or **neu**.

I exhort you to remain, **and not to** Hortor ut maneas, **neve** istius  
fear that fellow's violence. hominis vim **pertimescas**.

170. In an indirect command **ut** is often omitted. This is always the case after **vĕlim**, **nōlim**, **licet**, **oportet** and **nēcesse est**.

(a) Caesar commissions him **to** Huic Caesar mandat Remos  
visit the Remi. **adeat**.

(b) I would have you suppose Tu **velim** Laelium ipsum  
that Laelius himself is loqui **putes**.  
speaking.

(c) Love **must** of necessity **ensue**. Amor **exoriatur** **necesse est**.

171. This use of **velim** in (b) with the subjunctive is a polite alternative for the direct imperative; the imperative of **facio** with or without **ut** is similarly used.

Let me know how you are. **Fac sciam**  
or  
**Facito ut sciam** } quid agas.

172. In prohibitions **cavē ne** and **cave** with the subjunctive are found.

(a) Mind you don't come back. **Cave ne redeas**.

(b) Beware of preferring Caesar **Cave** Pompeio anteponas  
to Pompeius. **Caesarem**.

173. A relative clause subordinate to an indirect or reported command will be in the subjunctive if it forms part of the actual order.

Caesar ordered the Gauls to bring Caesar Gallis imperavit ut  
the corn **which they had pro-** frumentum afferrent **quod**  
**mised,** **essent polliciti**.

The actual order was "*Bring the corn which you have promised*".

174. It should be noted that verbs of *advising* and *persuading* may also govern an accusative and infinitive. Latin has an **ut-**

clause after these verbs when the English has the infinitive, and the accusative and infinitive when the English has a *that*-clause,

- (a) I was persuaded **to leave** Mihi persuasum est ut Romā  
Rome. **excederem.**
- (b) I was persuaded **that he had** Mihi persuasum est eum  
**left** Italy. ex Italia **excessisse.**

*Learn by heart and translate :—*

Olim mihi nullas epistulas mittis. Nihil est, inquis, quod scribam. At hoc ipsum scribe nihil esse quod scribas, vel solum illud unde incipere priores solebant "si vales, bene est; ego valeo".<sup>1</sup> Hoc mihi sufficit; est enim maximum. Ludere me putas? serio peto. Fac sciam quid agas, quod sine sollicitudine summa nescire non possum. Vale.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE 23.

1. Caesar ordered the Aedui to send corn to his winter quarters as soon as possible.
2. See to it<sup>3</sup> that the enemy does not attack us unawares.
3. The council was hardly dismissed when<sup>4</sup> Cicero warned me not to vent my anger on the patriotic party.
4. My father, who is exceedingly angry with you, asked me not to send you this letter.
5. I asked him what o'clock it was, but he gave me no answer.
6. The foot soldiers were ordered to advance, the cavalry being arranged on the right and left.<sup>5</sup>
7. The prisoner could not be induced either by threats or by entreaties to make a confession.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Often only the initials of these words were written, S.V.B.E.E.V. The expression occurs very often in letters.

<sup>2</sup> This is a letter from Pliny to one of his friends. <sup>3</sup> Use *caveo*.

<sup>4</sup> = the council having been hardly dismissed Cicero, etc.

<sup>5</sup> = on the right and left wing; *or*, on either side.

<sup>6</sup> = to confess the fault,

8. Remember that you are a man, and do your best to resist these temptations.

9. Mounting<sup>1</sup> his horse, he exhorted his men to bear in mind what they had accomplished hitherto and not to fear the threats of the enemy.

10. Your worthy brother has so often advised me to learn something fresh<sup>2</sup> every day that I have at last decided to comply with his wishes.

11. I wish you would induce your father to tell me what he really thinks about this matter; some say that he agrees with Pompeius, others with Caesar.

12. Those who opposed us yesterday pretend to-day that they have a high opinion of our policy.

13. I hear that the general has received a mortal wound; but do not despair of victory; there is no doubt that the reserves who are now coming up the hill will soon retrieve the day.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### SUPINES.—CERTAIN USES OF TENSES.

175. The **supine** is a verbal noun of which two cases are in use, the **accusative** in -um, and the **ablative** in -u.

The **supine** in -um is used with verbs of motion to express **purpose**. The adverbial use of the accusative with such verbs is in prose generally confined<sup>3</sup> to the words **domus** and **rus** and the names of towns and small islands. This supine is found most frequently with **eo**, **venio**, **prōficiscor** and **mitto**.

(a) He sent ambassadors **to seek** Legatos misit **pacem petit-**  
**peace.** **um.**

<sup>1</sup> (46).      <sup>2</sup> (149, e).

<sup>3</sup> There is also *infinitus* ire, to deny (literally, to go to a denial).



- (b) They started **on a foray.** **Praedatum** profecti sunt.  
 (c) They came **to complain of** **Venerunt** **questum iniurias.**  
**their wrongs.**

As this supine is verbal it may itself govern an object as in (a) and (c).

**176.** The supine in **-um** is combined with the **passive impersonal iri** to form a kind of future infinitive passive.

- (a) He hopes **that** the woman **will** **Sperat mulierem** **absolutum**  
**be acquitted.** **iri.**

Literally, *he hopes that there is a going to acquit the woman, mulierem* being the object of **absolutum**.

- (b) I hope that the war will soon **Spero mox** **debellatum iri.**  
**be over.**

**177.** The supine in **-u** limits the meaning of certain adjectives, as **facilis, difficilis, mirabilis, turpis, utilis**, and the substantives **fas** and **nefas**. All verbs do not have this supine.

- (a) It is **hard to say** how much **Difficile est dictu** quantum  
 money he has. **pecuniae habeat.**  
 (b) **Wonderful to behold!** **Mirabile visu!**  
 (c) You see that it is **impious to** **Videtis nefas** esse **dictu**  
**say** that an old age like this **talem senectutem miseram**  
**was unhappy.** **fuisse.**

**178.** In the sentence *I have long been exhorting you*, the perfect progressive tense denotes that the action of the verb began long ago and is still going on. In such cases the *present* tense is employed in Latin.

- (a) I **have long been exhorting** **Te iamdudum hortor.**  
 you.  
 (b) You **have long been desiring** **Hoc iampridem optas.**  
 this.  
 (c) He **has been reigning now** **Multos annos iam regnat.**  
 for many years.

179. So the pluperfect progressive is rendered by the Latin imperfect.

I had long **been exhorting** you. Te iamdudum **hortabar**.

180. The present tense is often used by Latin authors in a narrative of past events. It is then called **historic**, and presents the occurrence in a more **vivid** manner. It may have either primary or historic sequence.

So he summons the centurions and quickly **informs** the soldiers that they **are to discontinue** the battle for a little while. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites **certiores facit** (ut) paulisper **intermitterent** proelium.

181. In subordinate sentences referring to the **future** in English we often loosely employ the **present** tense. The Latin more correctly has the **future simple** or **future perfect**.

(a) As you **sow**, so shall you reap. Ut sementem **feceris**, ita mētes.

(b) I would like you to look into this when you **can**. Ea velim cum **poteris** invisas.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Ne quid nimis (sit).  
Let there be nothing in excess.

Aquila non captat muscas.  
An eagle does not hunt flies.

### EXERCISE 24.

1. After this defeat the Gauls sent ambassadors to beg for peace.

2. He did not doubt that Caesar had been informed that the city would be taken shortly.

3. The soldiers marched forty miles without baggage and at sunset pitched their camp at the foot of the mountain.

4. It was difficult to see what [object] the men who slew Caesar had in view.

5. How long have you been studying literature with<sup>1</sup> so little profit?

6. I desire now, and have long been desiring, to know where in the world such a man can be found.

7. Cicero had been staying with me for several months; for he sold his own house at the price that he wished. I am afraid, however, that nothing will induce him to return to the city.

8. Your father's contemporaries will be glad<sup>2</sup> that he has attained to such distinctions.

9. When I can, I shall be glad to help you; we are bound to do all we can, one for the other.

10. When the fight had gone on for some time, the officers run up to Caesar and inform him that the enemy are attacking us in the rear.

11. I should like you to inform me how<sup>3</sup> you are and where you are staying.

12. Under these circumstances, I advise you not to humour your brother; his aims are different<sup>4</sup> from yours, and therefore it is quite impossible for you to have the same opinions<sup>5</sup> as he has.

13. The loyalty of our allies seems to be wavering; some are hastening to the camp of Hannibal, others are secretly leaving Italy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cum.      <sup>2</sup> (14).      <sup>3</sup> = what you are doing.      <sup>4</sup> (115).

<sup>5</sup> = to think the same things as he, (82) and (114).

## CHAPTER XXV.

## THE ABLATIVE.

**182.** While the genitive for the most part has an adjectival signification, the **ablative** on the other hand is essentially **adverbial**. It expresses the idea of (i.) **separation**, (ii.) **accompanying circumstances**, (iii.) **instrumentality**, (iv.) **time and place**.

**183.** Under (i.) comes the ablative of **separation**, which is used both with verbs and adjectives.

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| (a) Caesar had cut off the Gauls          | Caesar <b>re frumentaria</b> Gal- |
| <b>from their corn supply.</b>            | los intercluserat.                |
| (b) The king was despoiled <b>of the</b>  | Rex <b>regno</b> patrio spoliatus |
| <b>realm of his fathers.</b>              | est.                              |
| (c) The camp is void <b>of defenders.</b> | Castra vacua sunt <b>dēfens-</b>  |
|   | <b>oribus.</b>                    |

**184.** The ablative of **origin** is akin to the preceding.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| (a) He was not only of a humble | Ille <b>loco</b> non <b>humili</b> solum |
| but even a mean origin.         | sed etiam <b>sordido</b> ortus           |
|                                 | est.                                     |

(Literally, he sprang from a position, etc.)

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (b) Apollo was the son of Jupiter. | Apollo <b>Iōve</b> natus est. |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|

The preposition **ab** is inserted when the reference is to a distant ancestor.

**185.** The ablative of **comparison** follows comparative adjectives and adverbs.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Who was ever <b>more learned</b>   | Quis hoc homine unquam                    |
| <b>than this man?</b>                  | <b>doctior</b> fuit?                      |
| (b) <b>More than</b> is right.         | <b>Plus aequo.</b>                        |
| (c) A surrender was made <b>sooner</b> | <b>Māturior</b> ipsius <b>spe</b> deditio |
| <b>than he himself expected.</b>       | est facta.                                |

- (d) He came more quickly than **Opīnione celerius vēnit.**  
**was expected.**

This construction takes the place of **quam** with the **nominative** or **accusative**. If other cases follow, **quam** must be used.

**186.** Under (ii.) comes the ablative of **quality**, which always has an adjective in agreement. External and bodily characteristics are generally expressed by this ablative. Mental and permanent qualities may be denoted by the ablative or the genitive of quality, *cf.* (144).

- (a) They asserted that the Ger- **Ingenti magnitudine cor-**  
 mans were **of great bodily** **porum** Germanos esse  
**stature.** **praedicabant.**
- (b) He always showed **extra-** **Semper singulari fuit au-**  
**ordinary boldness.** **dāciā.**
- (c) **How great** ought to be the **Quantā innocentīā debent**  
**integrity** of our generals ! **esse imperatores.**

**187.** The ablative of **manner**. As a rule, this is qualified by an adjective.

- (a) He came **with the utmost** **Summa celeritate venit.**  
**speed.**

If there is no adjective the preposition **cum** is inserted, as it sometimes is when the adjective is present.

- (b) He returned **in haste.** **Cum celeritate rediit.**
- (c) **To the supreme safety of** **Summa cum salute rei-**  
 the state. **publicae.**

Certain ablatives like *iūre*, *justly*, and *iniuriā*, *unjustly*, are used adverbially without a preposition.

**188.** The ablative of **respect**.

- (a) How strong he is **in force** and **Quantum dicendi gravitate**  
**fluency** of diction ! **et copiā valet !**
- (b) All these differ from one an- **Hi omnes linguā, institutis,**  
 other **in language, customs** **legibus** inter se differunt.  
 and laws.

The **ablative absolute**, which expresses accompanying circumstances, has been already explained (Ch. IX.). For the ablative with prepositions see Appendix I., B.

*Latin Proverbs.*

**Tendere de fumo ad flammam.**

To jump out of the frying pan into the fire.

(To hurry from the smoke to the flame.)

**Multa audi, loquere pauca.**

Hear much and say little.

**EXERCISE 25.**

1. The general sent an officer to urge the enemy to surrender.
2. Your fickleness is such that I can neither live with you nor without you.
3. Plato says that men are deceived by pleasure, as fish by the hook.
4. According to their custom they preferred to fight on horseback; and so they were unable to make their way through the thick woods.
5. He had a conversation with me concerning this matter in the presence of my father, who in my opinion showed<sup>1</sup> extraordinary resolution.
6. It is said that the consul, whom you have always regarded as the saviour of the city, sprang from a very lowly origin.<sup>2</sup>
7. The Stoics think that everything is of less account than virtue, and that therefore a man who is<sup>3</sup> really wise prefers virtue to all human concerns.
8. Sword in hand<sup>4</sup> the conspirators entered the town, and ordered the few<sup>5</sup> soldiers whom they had with them to break open the doors of the palace.

---

<sup>1</sup> (186).    <sup>2</sup> = place.    <sup>3</sup> (18).    <sup>4</sup> (190, b).    <sup>5</sup> (103).

9. Without opposition <sup>1</sup> the legions marched over the difficult ground, and arrived at the city of Aquileia, which is ten miles distant from our winter-quarters, more quickly than was expected.<sup>2</sup>

10. But enough of this; remember, pray, wherever you are, that I have always regarded you as a friend.

11. The defendant, an old man with white hair and downcast head, entreated the judges to pardon him.

12. All your plans are now clearer than the light; I can easily tell you how many have joined you and what crimes they are ready to commit.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### THE ABLATIVE—*Continued.*

189. Under the third head, instrumentality, may be classed: the ablative of **means** or **cause**.

(a) Brutus killed Caesar **with a sword.** *Caesarem gladio interfecit Brutus.*

(b) I have grown old **with grief.** *Maerore consenui.*

190. But when *with* denotes accompaniment, the preposition **cum** must be used.

(a) I cannot live with you. *Tecum non possum vivere.*

(b) He took his stand **with a sword** in the senate house. *In curia cum gladio stetit.*

191. The ablative of the agent, with the preposition **a** or **ab**. The agent must be a person or some living thing.

The city was saved **by Camillus.** *A Cāmillo urbs servata est.*

192. The ablative of **measure.** This is used with **comparatives.**

---

<sup>1</sup> = no one preventing.      <sup>2</sup> (185, d).



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) He speaks <b>a little</b> more freely.   | <b>Paulo</b> liberius loquitur.  |
| (b) <b>Much</b> more easily.   | <b>Multo</b> facilius.   |
| (c) <b>The</b> sooner <b>the</b> better.   | <b>Quo</b> citius <b>eo</b> melius.  |
| (d) <b>The</b> longer I consider the<br>matter <b>the</b> more mysterious<br>does it seem. | <b>Quanto</b> diutius considero<br><b>tanto</b> mihi res videtur<br>obscurior. |

193. The adverb *much* with verbs is translated by **multum**.  
I am **much** affected. **Multum** sum commotus.

194. The ablative of **definite price** with verbs of buying, selling, exchanging.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) You bought the state back from<br>the Gauls <b>with gold</b> .   | <b>Auro</b> civitatem a Gallis re-<br>dēmistis.  |
| (b) That victory cost us <b>dear</b> .   | Ea victoria nobis <b>magno</b><br>stetit.  |
| (c) <b>For how much</b> was the book<br>bought? <b>For a little sum</b> .<br>For how much, I say? <b>For</b><br>three <b>denarii</b> . | <b>Quanti</b> <sup>1</sup> liber emptus est?<br><b>Parvo</b> . <b>Quanti</b> ergo?<br><b>Tribus dēnāriis</b> . |

Here **quanti** is indefinite, as is shown by the repetition of the question, and is therefore genitive of price, but **parvo** and **denariis** are definite and therefore **ablative**. Similar ablatives to **parvo** are **magno**, **permagno**, **plurimo**, **minimo**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (d) He exchanged friendship <b>for</b><br><b>hatred</b> . | <b>Amicitiam</b> <b>ōdio</b> (abl.) mut-<br>avit. |
|---|---|

195. Verbs and adjectives denoting **abundance** and the opposite are used with the ablative.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| (a) The farm abounds <b>in milk</b> .      | <b>Villa</b> abundat <b>lacte</b> .  |
| (b) I easily dispense with <b>riches</b> . | <b>Facile</b> <b>divitiis</b> careo. |
| (c) I am in want of <b>bread</b> .         | <b>Pane</b> egeo.                    |

196. The deponent verbs **fungor**, *I perform*; **fruor**, *I enjoy*; **pōtior**, *I gain possession of*; **utor**, *I use*; **vescor**, *I eat*; **glorior**,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. (158).

*I boast of; dignor, I deem worthy of; indignor, I do not deem worthy of; and the adjectives dignus, indignus and frētus complete their meaning by the aid of the ablative.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) He performs the bodily functions.                          | <b>Muneribus</b> fungitur corp-<br>oris.   |
| (b) They do not know how to avail themselves of their victory. | <b>Victoriā</b> uti nesciunt.              |
| (c) He prides himself on his virtue.                           | <b>Virtute</b> sua gloriatur.              |
| (d) They are worthy of the most honourable rewards.            | Amplissimis <b>praemiis</b> digni<br>sunt. |
| (e) Relying on your friendship.                                | <b>Amicitia</b> vestrā fretus.             |

### EXERCISE 26.

1. How much better is it to perish on the field-of-battle than to live dishonourably.

2. He asked us whether Pompeius had availed himself of the victory which he had won.

3. Though <sup>1</sup> few in number, the soldiers will easily get possession of the town.

4. Whether <sup>2</sup> he intended <sup>3</sup> it or not, he has certainly done much harm to the Conservative party.

5. I was greatly affected by the news, and for a long time could scarcely speak for <sup>4</sup> grief.

6. For how much did you sell your farm? For a very large sum? <sup>5</sup> I sold it for as much as I wished.

7. The further we go <sup>6</sup> into the enemy's country, the more dangerous does our march become.

8. It is well known that this victory cost the Persians many lives <sup>7</sup> and much money.

9. Are you free from that error into which my friends have so often fallen?

<sup>1</sup> Quamvis.      <sup>2</sup> (137).      <sup>3</sup> = wished.      <sup>4</sup> Use prae.

<sup>5</sup> (194).      <sup>6</sup> = advance.      <sup>7</sup> = blood.

10. A rush was made by the soldiers into the senate-house, and a cry was raised that the enemy were taking up their position on the top of the hill.

11. Every one knows that we have exchanged peace for war. It is quite impossible then for you to enter the city, as-it-has-been-blockaded by the enemy.

12. There is no doubt that this campaign has cost us dear. But what were we to do? Our credit, our prestige, our revenues were at stake. Relying on our carelessness the king, who for a long time had been preparing for war, at last betrayed what his real object<sup>1</sup> was. Concentrating all his forces he sent ambassadors to call upon us to withdraw our garrisons from the island; and when no answer was given to them by the senate he threatened to burn the towns and lay waste the fields of our allies. All men are naturally inclined to peace; but who of us wished to purchase peace at such a price?<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### TIME AND SPACE.

**197.** The time **when** an event takes place is denoted by the simple ablative.

By night.	Nocte.	In the autumn.	Autumno.
At sunset.	Solis occasu.	At dawn.	Prima luce.

The preposition **in** must be used with words which do not by themselves denote time, as *in life*, *in vita*.

*At this time* is **hoc tempore**, but when **tempus** conveys a further idea the preposition is inserted.

**In** such an **emergency**. **In tali tempore**.

**198.** The ablative also denotes the time **within which** something happens.

---

<sup>1</sup> = what he really had in view.      <sup>2</sup> (158).

- (a) **In the course of these few days** the Aulerci had joined Viridovix.      **His paucis diebus** Aulerci se cum Virodovice coniunxerant.
- (b) Roscius has not visited Rome **for many years.**      Roscius Romam **multis annis** non vēnit.
- (c) The city will be taken **in three days** or at most **in four.**      Urbs **trīduo**, ad summum **quatrīduo** capietur.

**199.** To express length of time **before** or **after** an event the ablative may be used, with **post** or **ante** added as adverbs.

- (a) **A few days afterwards** he returned to Rome.      **Paucis post diebus** Romam rediit.
- (b) He had been made king **ten years** before the war.      Rex factus erat **decem annis** ante bellum.

Or the expression of time may be put in the accusative governed by the prepositions **post** and **ante**.

- (c) I have returned **after thirty-six years.**      **Post sextum et tricēsimum annum** redii.

**200.** Duration of time is denoted by the **accusative**, sometimes with the preposition **per** added.

- (a) The battle continued **almost for three hours.**      **Tres ferme horas** pugnatum est.
- (b) **For three years** he oppressed Sicily.      Siciliam **per triennium** vexavit.
- (c) He taught music **at the age of seventy-five.**      **Quinque et septuaginta annos** natus musicam docebat.

We might also say **Cum annum septuagesimum quintum ageret** (*when he was passing his seventy-fifth year*).

**201.** *Ago* is rendered by the adverb **abhinc**, which is put **before** the noun. The latter is generally in the accusative.

- (a) This took place about **twenty years ago.**      **Abhinc annos prope viginti** hoc factum est.

(b) I saw him **two years ago**.      **Abhinc biennium eum vidi.**

202. The accusative denotes **extent of space** as well as extent of time.

(a) Rome is **eight miles** distant      Roma illinc **octo millia**  
from there.      **passuum** abest.

(b) The ditch is five **feet** deep.      Fossa quinque **pedes** est lata.

(c) On that day Caesar marched      Eo die **plus** viginti millia  
a distance of **more than**      **passuum** Caesar iter fecit.  
twenty miles.

It will be noticed that the numeral is not in the ablative of comparison. The words **plus** and **amplius**, *more*, and **minus**, *less*, are used, either with or without *quam*, without affecting the case of the numeral. Here **millia** is the accusative of extent of space.

*Learn and translate :—*

C. Mārius, cum a spe consulatus longe abesset, et iam septimum annum post praeturam iacēret, neque petiturus unquam consulatum videretur, Q. Metellum, cuius lēgatus erat, apud populum Romanum criminatus est bellum illud ducere; si se consulem fecissent, brevi tempore aut vivum aut mortuum Iugurtham se in potestatem populi Romani redacturum. Itaque factus est ille quidem consul, sed a fide iustitiaeque discessit.

### EXERCISE 27.

1. You cannot<sup>1</sup> govern your tongue for one single hour.
2. The hill was surrounded on every side by a ditch nowhere wider than fifty feet.
3. Your letter arrived too late<sup>2</sup> for me to answer yesterday.
4. I have been living now for so many years in such a way, that I am no longer able to feel the same as you do in this matter.
5. Mind you are at home in January: relying on your friendship I have taken such enterprises<sup>3</sup> in hand as I can hardly accomplish in your absence.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = not even one hour.

<sup>2</sup> (71).

<sup>3</sup> = such things.

<sup>4</sup> Abl. abs.

6. The walls which surrounded the city of Corinth were forty feet high.

7. This important<sup>1</sup> war was taken in hand by Pompeius at the beginning of spring,<sup>2</sup> and finished a few months afterwards.

8. I hoped two-days ago soon to bring him back to Rome, dead or alive; but now I doubt whether this is possible.

9. In the course of these [last] few years no innovation has been made contrary to the precedents of our ancestors.

10. On the day before he left the city Cato, as<sup>3</sup> all acknowledge, said that it was of the greatest importance to him that I should have an interview with Caesar.

11. Instead of helping me, you always prevented me from serving my countrymen.

12. On the next day at sunset Hannibal, having noticed that the numbers of the enemy were daily increasing, orders his soldiers to retreat with the utmost speed to the foot of the hill.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### PLACE.

**203.** With common nouns and names of countries the place **where** something happens is expressed by the ablative with a preposition.

(a) Caesar decided to winter **in** Constituit Caesar **in vico**  
**the village.** **hiemare.**

(b) They are carrying on business **In Asia** negotiantur.  
**in Asia.**

**204.** The preposition is sometimes omitted with a few nouns in very common use, especially when joined with the adjectives **totus** and **medius**.

(a) By land and sea. Terrā marique.

---

<sup>1</sup> = so-great.    <sup>2</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>3</sup> (102).



- |                         |            |
|-------------------------|------------|
| (b) In one place.       | Uno loco.  |
| (c) Over the whole sea. | Toto mari. |

205. Other prepositions are used locally with the cases which they respectively govern.

- |                               |                |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| (a) Near Gereonium.           | Ad Gereonium.  |
| (b) Near the town.            | Prope oppidum. |
| (c) On this side of the Ebro. | Cis Hiberum.   |

206. With names of towns and **small**<sup>1</sup> islands and certain common nouns the **locative**<sup>2</sup> case is used. This has the same termination as the ablative, except with nouns of the first and second declension used in the singular number, when it coincides with the genitive. The locatives of common nouns in use are **dōmi**, *at home*; **hūmi**, *on the ground*; **rūri**, *in the country*; **belli** and **militiae**, *in the field of war* (only used in contrast to **domi**), and **fōris**, *out of doors*.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) I have stayed both <b>at Corinth</b> and <b>Sardes</b> .  | Et <b>Corinthis</b> et <b>Sardibus</b> commoratus sum.                   |
| (b) I will announce this <b>at Rome</b> , <b>at Circeii</b> and <b>at Carthage</b> .                  | Et <b>Romae</b> et <b>Circeiis</b> et <b>Carthagine</b> hoc nuntiabo.    |
| (c) I am not going to declare what great exploits he has performed <b>at home</b> and <b>abroad</b> . | Non sum praedicaturus quantas ille res <b>domi militiaeque</b> gesserit. |

207. Place **whence** is denoted by the ablative with **e**, **ex**, **a** or **ab**, except in the case of **towns** and **small islands**, **domus** and **rus**, when the ablative alone is employed.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Medea is said to have fled <b>from Pontus</b> . | <b>E Ponto</b> Mēdēa profugisse dicitur. |
|---|--|

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.*, small enough to be considered as one place.

<sup>2</sup> The **locative** was a case employed in primitive Latin to denote *the place where* something was done. It has survived only in a few words, its functions having been divided between the genitive and the ablative.



- (b) I started **from the city.** **Ab urbe** profectus sum.  
 (c) He has returned **from Lesbos.** **Lesbo** rediit.  
 (d) To-morrow I shall return **from** **Cras rure** redibo.  
**the country.**

But when *from* means *distant from* the preposition **a** or **ab** is used even with the names of towns.

- (e) This town is ten miles **from** **Hoc oppidum a Roma** decem  
**Rome.** **millia passuum abest.**

**208.** Place **whither** is in the accusative with a preposition, except with **towns**, etc.

- (a) He sent an envoy **to Spain.** **Legatum in Hispaniam**  
**misit.**  
 (b) He came to **Heraclea.** **Hēracleām** venit.

The preposition is put with towns when *to* means *to the neighbourhood of*.

- (c) I marched with him **to the** **Cum eo ad Capuam** pro-  
**neighbourhood of Capua.** **fectus sum.**

**209.** If the name of the town has an adjective with it these rules require some modification. The locative **domi** and the accusative **domum** may have a possessive adjective with them, but with any other adjective a prepositional construction must be used.

The following examples should be carefully considered :—

- (a) The Luculli took him back to **Lūculli eum domum suam**  
**their house.** **receperunt.**  
 (b) You asked me to take charge **Rogasti ut domi meae te**  
**of you in my house.** **adservarem.**  
 (c) He returned to his friends at **Romam ad amicos rediit.**  
**Rome.**  
 (d) In the city of Rome. **In urbe Roma.**  
 (e) When will you return from **Quando Athenis ex urbe pul-**  
**beautiful Athens?** **cherrima redibis?**  
 (f) I remained for a few days in **Neapoli in urbe praeclar-**  
**the famous city of Naples.** **issima paucos dies mansi.**

**210.** The road by which one goes is put in the ablative without a preposition.

They could not go by this road **Hac via** invito Caesare ire against the wishes of Caesar. non poterant.

*Latin Proverbs.*

**Ne sutor supra crepidam.**

Let the shoemaker stick to his last.

(Let not the shoemaker go beyond the sandal.)

**Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.**

It does not happen to every man to visit Corinth.

**EXERCISE 28.**

1. He seems to have been born at Tusculum, but I know that he lived many years at Syracuse.

2. I would have <sup>1</sup> you inquire what letters have been brought to Gaius from Rome.

3. Maecenas, accompanied by Horace,<sup>2</sup> travelled from Rome to Brundisium in fifteen days.

4. When banished from the pleasant city of Naples, Valerius betook himself to the distant island of Lesbos.

5. Every one has heard that Pompeius was made consul on account of his achievements at home and abroad, by land and by sea.

6. My uncle lived fifteen years at Syracuse, but he died at Naples at the age of seventy-two.

7. Having mustered the soldiers he warned them all to go by the upper road; how few there were who obeyed him!

8. Very fortunately Cato happened <sup>3</sup> to be at my house yesterday; he has decided to sail for Africa to-morrow in order to join Pompeius.

<sup>1</sup> (170, b).      <sup>2</sup> Abl. abs. = Horace following.

<sup>3</sup> = it fortunately happened that Cato, etc.

9. After a large number of the soldiers had been slain the rest retired to their camp, which was three miles distant from Aquileia.

10. You told me that Catiline had left Rome, but I hear that he returned late at night to his house with his wife and children; and I only wish <sup>1</sup> he had not ventured to do this.

11. Do you wish to leave the province while your father is alive? Remember pray what assistance <sup>2</sup> he has rendered you in every respect; do not desert him now-that-he-is-old and helpless.

12. Mind that you return to your friends at Corinth, that no one <sup>3</sup> may say that you have forgotten those who have always complied with your wishes.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### OBLIGATION AND NECESSITY.

**211.** To express the idea of **obligation** in Latin we may use:—

(i.) The verb **dēbeo** with the infinitive.

(a) You **ought** to honour him as Eum patris loco **debes** colere.  
a father.

The words *ought* and *must* have no distinctive form for the past tense, and so in order to denote past time we put the infinitive which follows in the past, but in Latin this is not necessary, as *debeo* has past tenses.

(b) You ought **to have honoured** Eum patris loco **debebas**  
him as a father. **colere.**

(c) Ought his friends **to have** Num Maelium amici debue-  
**helped** Maelius? **runt iuvare?**

---

<sup>1</sup> (164, c).      <sup>2</sup> (40, d).      <sup>3</sup> (66).

212. (ii.) The impersonal **oportet** (*it behoves*) with the accusative and infinitive, or the subjunctive without **ut** (170).

- (a) You **ought** to come home. **Oportet** te domum venire.  
 (b) You **ought to have come** **Oportuit** te domum venire.  
     home.  
 (c) You **ought** to do this. **Oportet** hoc facias, or **oportet** te hoc facere.

213. (iii.) The **gerundive** or verbal adjective. This may denote either obligation or necessity.

- (a) We **must** not **disregard** fame. Nobis fama non est **neglegenda**.

Here the form of expression in Latin is passive (*fame is not to-be-disregarded by us*). The gerundive is predicative, and agrees like an adjective with the subject **fama**. This form can only be employed when the Latin verb selected governs the accusative, as **neglego** does. The English can have either the active or passive.

- (b) This opportunity **must** not **be** **Haec occasio non est amit-**  
     **lost.** **tenda.**

The agent, the person who has to perform the duty, is in the **dative** case.

- (c) You **must** wipe away that **Delenda est vobis illa ma-**  
     **stain.** **cula.**

214. But if the Latin verb is **intransitive**, *i.e.*, if it does not govern the accusative, or if there is no object expressed, then the gerundive is used **impersonally**.

- (a) I **must** go. **Mihi eundum est.**

**Eo** is intransitive and can only be used in the passive impersonally. So we use the neuter singular of the gerundive, *it is to-be-gone by me*. Some grammarians regard **eundum** here as the nominative of the gerund or verbal noun, *there is a going for me*.

- (b) I **must** conquer. **Mihi vincendum est.**

**Vinco** is transitive, but in this sentence there is no object and the impersonal construction is used.

(c) We must resist old age. **Resistendum senectuti est.**

*Resisto* governs the dative, and is intransitive.

(d) You will have to consult the interests of your fellow-citizens. **Civibus a vobis consulendum erit.**

*Consulo* with this meaning governs the dative. To avoid ambiguity between agent and object when the verb governs the dative, the agent in this case is expressed by the **ablative** with **a** or **ab**.

(e) I had to spare your friends. **Amicis tuis a me parcendum fuit.**

**215.** The impersonal **nēcesse est** with infinitive or subjunctive (as **oportet**) denotes necessity.

(a) There is no necessity for me to say anything about myself. **Nihil necesse est mihi de me ipso dicere.**

(b) Affection must necessarily ensue. **Amor exoriatur necesse est.**

### EXERCISE 29.

1. Every one knows that he must obey the laws of his country.

2. Who is there who does not know that we must all die?

3. The eloquent Hortensius made a long speech without<sup>1</sup> persuading the jury to acquit the prisoner.

4. We must throw open the gates and<sup>2</sup> force a way through the midst of the enemy.

5. You must not lose the opportunity which has presented<sup>3</sup> itself; both your father and I have long been exhorting you to take part in political life.

6. The first thing to be demanded of the orator is that he should speak good<sup>4</sup> Latin.

<sup>1</sup> = and nevertheless did not persuade.

<sup>2</sup> = the gates having been thrown open.

<sup>3</sup> = which has been presented.      <sup>4</sup> = speak Latin well.

7. Quarrels necessarily<sup>1</sup> often arise between friends who refuse to give way to one another.<sup>2</sup>

8. You ought to remember that different people have different aims; *you* are courting the favour of the democrats, *I* prefer to be neutral.

9. In such an emergency we ought to consult the interests of our allies; nevertheless we shall have to take care not to endanger the safety of our countrymen.

10. I feel sure that Pompeius is not fit to undertake such a task; his friends ought to have seen that he is no longer what<sup>3</sup> he was.

11. When I asked whether he ought not to return to his father at Rome, the youth replied that he had no<sup>4</sup> money.

12. It is the part of cowards to sit down and believe that the war can be brought to a close by means of the senate's decrees. We ought to take up arms and wrest victory from<sup>5</sup> the enemy.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

216. The gerund and gerundive are also found in other cases than the nominative without any notion of obligation, but with the same simple meaning as the English infinitive or verbal noun.

217. The English verbal noun in *-ing*, when subject or direct object of a verb, is rendered by the Latin infinitive.

(a) **Walking** is agreeable to me. **Ambulare** mihi est iucundum.

(b) I prefer **walking**. **Malo ambulare.**

218. But when it is the object of a preposition it is translated by the Latin **gerund**.

<sup>1</sup> (215).      <sup>2</sup> = one to the other.      <sup>3</sup> = the same as,

<sup>4</sup> (149).      <sup>5</sup> (31).



- (a) I am desirous of walking. **Ambulandi** cupidus sum.  
 (b) He said that these were the **Coniurandi** has esse causas  
 reasons of their conspir- dixit.  
 ing.

219. So the gerund supplies the cases which the substantival infinitive cannot express.

- (a) A happy life. **Beate** vivere.  
 (b) For a happy life. **Ad beate vivendum.**

220. The accusative of the gerund with **ad** or the genitive with **causā** or **gratiā** (placed after the word they govern) denotes purpose and is equivalent to a final clause.

- (a) They go to Athens for the **Discendi causa** Athenas  
 sake of learning. eunt.  
 (b) For the sake of wintering. **Hiemandi gratia.**

221. The dative of the gerund is used as indirect object, and sometimes when used predicatively denotes purpose.

- (a) He pays attention to writing. **Scribendo** operam dat.  
 (b) Many states are not solvent. **Multae civitates non sunt**  
 (Literally, are not for paying.) **solvendo.**

222. The ablative of the gerund denotes the instrument. It is also found with the preposition **in**, but very rarely with any other.

- (a) By daring and doing the Ro- **Audendo** atque **agendo** res  
 man power grew. **Romāna** crevit.  
 (b) In accusing. **In accusando.**

223. If the verbal noun has an object, the gerund is employed when that object would be in Latin in some other case than the accusative.

An opportunity of pardoning **Facultas ignoscendi cap-**  
 the captives was given. **tivis** dabatur.

**Ignoscendi** is genitive depending on **facultas**, and **captivis** is dative governed by **ignoscendi**.



**224.** But if the object would be in the **accusative**, the gerund, with certain exceptions, is not to be used, but the **gerundive construction** takes its place. The noun is put in the particular case required by the sentence, and the gerundive, which is a verbal adjective, is made to agree with it in gender, number and case.

- (a) The consul alone had the right **of appointing a dictator.** Uni consuli ius erat **dicendi dictatoris.**

(Literally, of a dictator to-be-appointed.)

- (b) An opportunity was given **of Sui recipiendi facultas retreating.** dabatur.

Sui is the genitive of **se**, and **recipiendi** is the gerundive in agreement. With **sui** the gerundive is put in the singular number even when more than one person is referred to.

- (c) Orestes slew his mother **in order Patris ulciscendi causa to avenge his father.** Orestes matrem necavit.

- (d) They received money **for giving Ob rem iudicandam a verdict.** pecuniam acceperunt.

- (e) They sent ambassadors **to seek Legatos ad pacem for peace.** miserunt petendam, or pacis petendae causa.

**225.** It is better **not** to use the gerund with an accusative following, except where the object is a neuter pronoun, or where the gerundive would cause ambiguity. Sometimes the gerund is chosen for the sake of euphony.

- (a) By promising something. **Aliquid promittendo.**  
 (b) Of telling the truth. **Vera dicendi.**  
 (c) I am carried away by the desire **Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.**  
 of seeing your fathers.

The gerund is used here to avoid the similarity of sound in **vestrorum videndorum**.

**226.** The gerundive of **ūtor, fruor, fungor, pōtior** may be employed. In early Latin these verbs governed the accusative. The hope of getting possession **Spes potiundorum castrorum** (or *spes potiundi castris*).  
of the camp.

**227.** The gerundive construction is also used **predicatively** with active and passive verbs, and especially with **do** and **curo**.

- (a) They put the **building of the temple** out on contract. **Aedem faciendam** locaverunt.  
(b) He **had** a false will signed. **Falsum testāmentum ob-signandum curavit**.  
(c) He gave me the gold **to keep**. **Aurum mihi servandum** dedit.  
(d) The rest of the booty was given **up for plunder**. **Cetera praeda dīripienda** data est.

*Learn and translate :—*

Nullum iam aliquot annis facinus exstitit nisi per te, nullum flāgitium sine te ; tibi uni multorum civium neces, tibi vexatio direptioque sociorum impūnita fuit ac libera ; tu non solum ad neglegendas leges et quaestiones, verum etiam ad ēvertendas perfringendasque valuisti. Superiora illa, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli : nunc vero me totum esse in metu propter unum te non est ferendum.

### EXERCISE 30.

1. All the property of the citizens was given up to the soldiers to be plundered.
2. I believe that the Gauls will soon send an envoy to beg for peace.
3. The slaying<sup>1</sup> of Hasdrubal put an end to Hannibal's<sup>2</sup> hopes of conquering the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> (52).

<sup>2</sup> Dative (41).

4. An assembly was proclaimed for the election<sup>1</sup> of consuls, one of whom, it was understood,<sup>2</sup> would nominate a dictator.

5. Our men, seeing that there was but-one hope of safety, made a sortie from the town so suddenly that no opportunity was given the enemy of discovering what was going on.

6. As far as men can, we wish to follow nature, the best guide to<sup>3</sup> a good and happy life.

7. You have fallen into debt, I know ; your enemies say that you are no longer solvent ; under these circumstances have you ventured to come from Gaul in order to stand for the consulship?

8. As soon as Caesar saw the extent of his danger he had a bridge made over the river, [and] then after-waiting a few days to give his soldiers an opportunity to rally,<sup>4</sup> he advanced fifteen miles into the enemy's country in order to<sup>5</sup> crush Ariovistus.

9. You were strong enough, you believed, to disregard the laws ; I am afraid you will soon discover by actual-experience<sup>6</sup> into what an error you have fallen.

10. Pompeius himself has promised that he will let no opportunity slip of pleasing your father, and there is no doubt that by doing and daring something you will soon attain to the highest distinctions.

11. As soon as the king had entered the house, a young man who had for a long time been waiting for him in the porch flung himself at his<sup>7</sup> feet.

12. It is said<sup>8</sup> that once Dionysius, the tyrant of Syracuse, wished to play at ball in order to exercise his body, and when he took off his tunic handed his sword to a young man who was standing by. A friend of his remarked that in laying aside his sword the king was certainly entrusting the youth with his life, and the youth laughed-at-this. Dionysius at once ordered both

<sup>1</sup> = for electing.

<sup>2</sup> = it was agreed.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive.

<sup>4</sup> = of rallying.

<sup>5</sup> Causā.

<sup>6</sup> = by testing.

<sup>7</sup> (41).

<sup>8</sup> (17).

to be killed, the one because<sup>1</sup> he had pointed out the way to slay<sup>2</sup> him, the other because he had shown<sup>3</sup> his approbation by laughing.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**228.** As the verb in Latin indicates the person by means of its termination, it is unnecessary to insert the personal pronoun as subject unless emphasis is required.

I am going to sleep, you to play. **Ego** dormitum eo, **tu** lusum. Here the two persons are contrasted.

**229.** **Tu** must always be used for the second person singular; **vos** is always plural. On the other hand **nos** and **noster** are sometimes employed for **ego** and **meus**. The personal pronoun may be emphasised by **quidem**.

**I indeed. Equidem. You indeed. Tu quidem.**  
**Not I indeed. Ne ego quidem. Not even you. Ne tu quidem.**

**230.** Two personal pronouns in a sentence are often placed in juxtaposition, even though there is no particular contrast.

What more pleasing (duty) could be imposed upon me by you? **Quid a te mihi iucundius potuit iniungi?**

**231.** Of the demonstrative pronouns **is** is used for the third person with reference to some person or thing already named, or about to be named. It is the natural correlative to **qui**.

- (a) I am the man who helped you. **Ego is sum qui tibi opem tuli.**  
 (b) I am not the man to let slip this opportunity. **Ego non is sum qui hanc occasionem òmittam.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Quia with subjunctive. Art. (309).

<sup>2</sup> = of slaying him.

<sup>3</sup> = he had approved this.

In both these examples **is** serves as completion of the predicate. In (a) **is qui** is followed by the indicative because the reference is definite; in (b) **omittam** is the generic (consecutive) subjunctive, *I am not the kind of man to let slip*.

**232. Is** is frequently used, with a conjunction added, to give emphasis to a fresh fact asserted.

(a) Our style of living was the same **and that too** in common. *Idem victus erat **isque** communis.*

(b) I have asked you **and that** very often. *Ex te quaesivi **idque** saepe.*

**233.** Of the other demonstratives **hic** denotes that which is near in time or place to the person speaking, **iste** that which is near to the person addressed, **ille** that which is more remote. **Hic** and **ille** are often contrasted, **hic** generally meaning *the latter*, **ille**, *the former*.

Do not place Socrates before Cato; the deeds of **the one**, the words of **the other** are praised. *Cave Socrātem Cātōni anteponas; **huius** facta, **illius** dicta laudantur.*

*Huius* refers to Cato, *illius* to Socrates.

**234. Ille** often indicates some celebrated person or thing.

(a) **The famous** Medea. *Mēdēa illa.*

(b) **The well-known** saying of Cassianus. *Cassianum<sup>1</sup> illud.*

**235. Ille** may render the English *this* or *the following*, with reference to something that is mentioned immediately afterwards.

Come, how great does **the following** circumstance prove his influence to be, that all have surrendered to him alone. *Age vero, illa res quantam declarat eius auctoritatem, quod omnes huic se uni dederunt.*

---

<sup>1</sup> **Cassianum** is an adjective agreeing with **dictum** understood.

236. *Iste* may simply mean *that of yours, e.g., those threats of yours, istae minae*, or it may be used contemptuously, *e.g., that fellow, iste homo*. It also denotes the opponent in a law-suit, *hic* being the other party to the suit.

I will make you understand what a crime **the defendant** has committed, and in what danger **my client** was. *Faciam ut intellegatis quantum facinus iste admisit, quanto in periculo hic versatus sit.*

### *Latin Proverbs.*

*Is minimo eget qui minimum cupit.*

*He wants least who desires least.*

*Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest.*

*What is done cannot be undone.*

### EXERCISE 31.

1. I do not know whether to praise or blame him.

2. Numa succeeded Romulus: the former excelled in peace, the latter in war.

3. Am I not to follow him whom all allow to be the chief-man of <sup>1</sup> our country?

4. I was the first and you were the last to admit that the slave had returned to Italy without the knowledge <sup>2</sup> or orders of his master.

5. I wish to ask you the following <sup>3</sup> [question], why on the day before your father died you said that he had not made a will.

6. Those who have for a long time been intimate with Pompeius and Caesar say that both the one <sup>4</sup> and the other have deserved well of their country. Who denies [it]? I for my part only exhort you to remember that we ought always to take the side of those who obey the laws.

---

<sup>1</sup> = in.    <sup>2</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>3</sup> (235).    <sup>4</sup> (233).



7. The<sup>1</sup> more promises the fellow made, the more angry your father became; you know from your boyhood that he bitterly hates ingratitude.

8. Is it possible, gentlemen-of-the-jury, for a man of such integrity to have committed this crime? My client earnestly entreats you to put no faith in his opponent's charges.

9. When no definite reply<sup>2</sup> was made by the consul to the envoys, they said that they must return home at once to consult the king, nor could they be persuaded to wait any-longer.

10. In selecting your friends are you so small minded as to pass over all who are-superior to you in wisdom?

11. And<sup>3</sup> when I heard that he was bankrupt, I returned to Italy as quickly as possible; for I am not the man to refuse to help my friends in distress.

12. As soon as the flag was displayed, the eagerness of the soldiers was so great that relying on their valour alone they flung down their spears, and charged the enemy sword in hand.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

### SE, SUUS, IPSE, QUISQUE.

237. The reflexive pronoun **se** and the corresponding adjective **suus** are used for the third person only, singular and plural, and refer to the grammatical subject of the principal verb.

(a) He showed **himself** worthy of     Dignum **se** maioribus **suis**  
       **his** ancestors.                                 praebuit.

(b) They fled from the city to save     Conservandi **sui** causa ex  
       **themselves**.                                         urbe profugerunt.

238. For the first and second persons **me**, **te**, **nos**, **vos** and the corresponding possessive adjectives are used.

---

<sup>1</sup> (192, d).     <sup>2</sup> = nothing of definite was answered.     <sup>3</sup> (106).



- (a) You were unable to set **yourself** in motion against the Government. Commovère **te** contra rem publicam non poteras.
- (b) I was refuted both by **my own** judgment and that of my friends. Et **meo** et amicorum iudicio revictus sum.

**239.** **Se** and **suus** are used in general statements where there is no definite subject.

- (a) To flatter **oneself** is always pleasant. **Sibi** placere semper est gratissimum.
- (b) Love of **self** influences most men. Amor **sui** plerosque movet.

**240.** Reciprocity may be expressed by **inter se**.

- (a) And they will not only honour and love but also respect **one another**. Neque solum colent **inter se** ac diligunt sed etiam verebuntur.
- (b) People differing **from one another** in character. Homines **inter se** moribus dissimiles.

**241.** In accusative and infinitive clauses **se** and **suus** refer to the subject of the principal verb.

He says that **he** has not sold **his** farm. Negat **se** fundum **suum** vendidisse.

**242.** In subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction **se** and **suus** generally refer to the subject of the principal sentence, particularly if the clause be one of purpose, indirect question or indirect request.

- (a) He asked why the ambassadors came **to him**. Rogavit cur legati **ad se** venissent.
- (b) My son entreated me to pardon **him**. Me oravit filius ut **sibi** ignoscerem.

**243.** But they sometimes refer to the subject of the subordinate verb, and the ambiguity may be removed by using **ipse** to denote the subject of the principal verb.

- (a) Caesar asks the soldiers why they despair of **their own** valour or of **his** care. Caesar milites rogat cur de **sua** virtute aut de **ipsius** diligentia desperent.

There is often no risk of ambiguity.

- (b) Caesar exhorts the Nervii not to lose the opportunity of freeing **themselves**. Caesar Nervios hortatur ne **sui** liberandi occasionem omittant.

Obs.—In consecutive clauses **eum** and **eos** are often found in place of **se**.

**244.** When emphatic **suus** will often stand for the English **their proper** or **his proper**, etc.

- (a) The ships had **their full** complement. **Suum** numerum naves haberunt.
- (b) The cavalry caused the panic **which they usually do**. **Suum** terrorem intulit eques.

**245.** **Ipse** is used of all three persons.

- (a) The **king himself** escaped from their hands. **Rex ipse** e manibus effugit.
- (b) I will write to you **myself**. Ad te **ipse** scribam.
- (c) It is not only the approach of evil but the **mere** apprehension of it that causes disaster. Non solum adventus mali sed etiam metus **ipse** affert calamitatem.
- (d) Our **ancestors**, without being affronted by any **personal** wrong, often waged wars. **Maiores** nostri nullā **ipsi** iniuriā lacessiti saepe bella gesserunt.

**246.** **Ipse** and **se** are often found in conjunction. **Ipse** is in apposition sometimes with the subject, sometimes with the reflexive, according to the emphasis required.

- (a) They are an example **to themselves**. **Ipsi sibi** exemplo sunt.
- (b) You will recognise **yourself**. **Te ipse** cognosces.
- (c) Brutus killed **himself**. Brutus **se ipsum** interfecit.

The genitive **ipsius** will in like manner lay stress on the possessive adjectives.

By **my own personal** care.      **Meā ipsius** diligentia.

**247. Quisque** *each* frequently accompanies **suus** or **se**.

- (a) They decided that it was best      Constituerunt optimum esse  
for them **each** to return      domum **suam quemque**  
home.      reverti.  
(b) They returned to **their several**      Domum **suam quisque** re-  
homes.      dierunt.

Here **quisque**, which must follow **suus**, is nominative in apposition with the subject implied in the verb.

- (c) **Each according to his ability**      **Pro se quisque** ad populum  
addressed the people.      loquebatur.

**248.** Other uses of **quisque** are :—

- (i.) With a noun.

**Each** part of the camp.      **Quaeque** pars castrorum.

- (ii.) With superlatives.

- (a) **All** good men.      Optimus **quisque**.  
(b) **All** that is oldest should be      Veterrima **quaeque** debent  
sweetest.      esse suavissima.

**Quisque** must be placed **after** the superlative.

- (iii.) With ordinal numerals.

Every tenth day.      **Decimo quōque** die.

**Quōque** must not be confused with **quōque** *also*.      *You also will go*, tu quōque ibis.

### EXERCISE 32.

1. He promised me that he would never leave home again against my will.

2. So far was Catiline from complying with your wishes that he himself was the first to oppose you.

3. He used-to-think that all time was wasted which was not devoted to getting money.

4. Cicero was grieved that the state which had once been saved by his policy was so soon destined-to-perish.

5. Our allies, since they are not allowed to speak freely, silently ask you to deem them also worthy to<sup>1</sup> help the state in this emergency.

6. The consul decided to cross over to Africa, in order that the enemy might have to fight on their own soil.

7. Yesterday I had a long conversation with the ambassadors of our allies, who, each to the best of his ability,<sup>2</sup> praised Caesar to the skies. The enemy, they said, had been so terrified by his mere arrival, that unasked they surrendered themselves and their towns.

8. It is universally agreed that that general who does not restrain himself is unable to restrain his soldiers.

9. The conspirators, on-being-informed that Catiline had at last left Rome, looked stealthily at one another.<sup>3</sup>

10. Self-love and self-confidence have been the ruin of your brother; and he very nearly<sup>4</sup> dragged us with him into the same disaster.

11. The intrepid general, seeing that his-men were in difficulties and the enemy pressing on, seized his sword and entreated all<sup>5</sup> the bravest soldiers to follow him, and by his own personal bravery restored the fortunes of the fight.

12. It is extraordinary how men, though-most-unlike one another in character and position, both those who have devoted themselves to politics, and those who find pleasure in the study of nature,<sup>6</sup> and those finally who have given themselves up entirely to pleasure, all<sup>7</sup> without exception have the same opinion about friendship.

---

<sup>1</sup> (71, a).      <sup>2</sup> (247, c).      <sup>3</sup> (240).      <sup>4</sup> (93, c).

<sup>5</sup> (248).      <sup>6</sup> = of things.      <sup>7</sup> = one and all.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

QUISQUAM, QUIS, QUIVIS, ALIQUIS, NESICIO QUIS, QUISPIAM  
QUIDAM.

**249.** In **negative** or comparative sentences, or sentences where a negative is implied, *any* is translated by **quisquam** or **ullus**. **Quisquam** is generally a pronoun, and **ullus** an adjective.

- (a) **And** they said they knew **Neque se quidquam** scire  
**nothing.** dixerunt.
- (b) He is richer than **any** of his Divitior est quam amicorum  
friends. **quisquam.**
- (c) As long as there shall be **any** Quamdiu **quisquam** erit qui  
**one** to dare to defend you, te defendere audeat, vives.  
you shall live.

It is implied that there will hardly be any one to venture to do this.

- (d) You have **no** friend. Non vobis est **ullus** amicus.

**250.** After **si, nīsi, num, nē, quo** *any* is translated by **quis, quid** if a pronoun, by **qui, quae, quod** if an adjective.

- (a) **If anything** shall have hap- Si quid mihi acciderit.  
pened to me.
- (b) I wish to name all, **lest any** Omnes nōminare volo, **ne**  
**one** should complain. quis queratur.
- (c) **The** more illustrious **any one** Quo quis clarior, eo invīsi-  
was, the more was he hated. or erat.
- (d) I say this **in order that no** Hoc dico **ne quod** periculum  
danger may terrify you. vos terreat.

**251.** *Any you like* is **quīvis, quidvis** or **quilibet, quidlibet** as pronoun, and **quīvis, quaevis, quodvis** or **quilibet, quae-libet, quodlibet** as adjective.

- (a) They venture to demand **any-** Quidvis ab amico audent  
**thing** from a friend. postulare.

- (b) **Any** man puts forward **any** **Quivis** homo quemvis rumour. morem prōfert.

252. *Whoever* is translated by the indefinite relative **quisquis** or **quicunque**.

- (a) **Whatever** you do you should **Quidquid** agis, agere pro do with all your might. viribus decet.  
 (b) They will make trial of **what- Fortuna, quaecunque** ac- ever fortune shall befall cident, expērientur. them.

253. *Some one*, as opposed to *no one*, is rendered by **āliquis**, **aliquid** as pronoun and **aliqui**, **aliquae**, **aliquid** as adjective.

- (a) I saw that **some one** would **Vidi fore ut aliquis** haec say this. diceret.  
 (b) **Something** must be granted **Aliquid** dandum est voluptati.

254. **Quispiam** is practically identical with **aliquis**.

- (a) **Some one** will have said. **Dixerit quispiam.**  
 (b) Hereupon **some one** will ask. **Hic quaeret quispiam.**

255. **Nescio quis** as pronoun and **nescio qui** as adjective are used as one word with the **indicative**.

- (a) He is bringing **some one or other** with him. **Ducit nescio quem** secum.  
 (b) **A certain** (product) results **Nescio quid** praeclarum ac both noble and remarkable. singulare existit.

256. *Some one*, meaning *some one person who could be named*, is rendered by **quidam**.

- (a) **A certain one** of my slaves. **Quidam** ex servis meis.  
 (b) **Some one** runs up known to me by name. **Accurrit quidam** mihi notus nomine.

257. **Quidam**, like **quāsi**, is often used by Latin writers with metaphorical expressions, or when the word to which it is attached is not quite appropriate.



- (a) **A sort of** ill-governed kind- Intemperata **quaedam** bene-  
ness. volentia.
- (b) All arts are connected one Omnes artes **quasi** cogna-  
with the other by **a sort of** tione **quādam** inter se  
affinity, **as it were.** continentur.

*Learn and translate :—*

Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, neque unquam in suo studio atque opere cessavit. Qui, cum ex eo quaereretur cur tam diu vellet esse in vita, "nihil habeo" inquit "quod accusem senectutem". Praeclarum responsum et docto homine dignum! Sua enim vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferunt.

### EXERCISE 33.

1. Can any one tell me whether the defendant has confessed the crime<sup>1</sup> or not?
2. I prefer suffering anything rather than doing what I shall afterwards be ashamed to remember.
3. The consul, who has<sup>2</sup> marvellous strength of mind, was little moved by my tears, and none of the bystanders could induce him to take pity on us.
4. I was moved, and that<sup>3</sup> deeply, by this rumour, for I had always been very intimate with your brother.
5. He said he would do anything to prevent Caesar being made king.
6. Each-man has enough and more than enough business of his own; it is troublesome to be involved in the affairs of others.
7. Some one perhaps will say that we ought to have declared war three-days ago, in order that no one might complain that the town had been attacked unawares.

---

<sup>1</sup> = about the crime.      <sup>2</sup> (186).      <sup>3</sup> (232).



8. It was of importance to us to know when Cicero said that there was no one in the state who could accomplish that except himself.

9. Pompeius is more fitted to<sup>1</sup> finish this task than any of his contemporaries, for whoever takes this war in hand ought to be a man of the greatest integrity and fairness.

10. You seem to be somewhat confused, my son ; probably you are terrified by the consciousness of recent crimes.

11. Certain spies had informed Caesar that the Helvetii had started from their camp in the night with the hope of seizing the hill. So he orders Labienus with the cavalry to cross the river and attack their line in the rear.

12. In every good man there is planted a certain virtue, which night and day<sup>2</sup> urges him on to higher-things, and warns him that a life which-is-given-up to pleasure is hardly worth-living.

13. It is not the luck of every one in this short span of life to attain to such distinctions.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

NEMO, NULLUS, UTER, UTERQUE, IDEM, CETERI, RELIQUI.

258. **Nemo** is a pronoun and **nullus** an adjective, but the ablative and genitive of **nemo** are not used, and their place is supplied by the ablative and genitive of **nullus**. On the other hand, as an adjective with nouns denoting persons in the nominative case, **nemo** is generally preferred to **nullus**.

**Nemo non** is *everybody* ; **nihil non**, *everything* ; **nullus non**, *every* ; but **non nemo** is *somebody* ; **non nihil**, *something* ; **non nullus**, *some*. **Nemo fere** (*no one almost*) is *hardly any one* ; **nullus fere**, *hardly any*.

(a) **No one** ventured to speak. **Nemo loqui ausus est.**

<sup>1</sup> Ad with gerundive construction.      <sup>2</sup> Nights and days.

- (b) So great was the eagerness of their minds that **no one** perceived the earthquake.      *Tantus fuit ardor animorum ut nemo motum terrae senserit.*

*That no one* in a consecutive clause is **ut nemo**, in a final clause **ne quis**.

- (c) **Everybody** sees an open flatterer.      *Aperte adulantem nemo non videt.*  
 (d) **No boy** wishes to play.      *Nemo puer ludere vult.*  
 (e) He is **somewhat** angry with me.      *Nonnihil mihi irascitur.*

**Nonnihil** is in the accusative case, and is used adverbially.

- (f) He had read **no** books.      *Nullos lēgerat libros.*

**259. Ūter**, *which of the two*, is interrogative ; **uterque**, *each of two*, is demonstrative.

- (a) He asks **which of the two** brothers is the richer.      *Uter fratrum sit divitior rogat.*  
 (b) You will have done a favour to **both** of us.      *Utrique nostrum gratum feceris.*  
 (c) **Each of the two** languages.      *Utraque lingua.*

**Uterque** is followed by the partitive genitive of pronouns, but is made an adjective in agreement when used with nouns.

**260. Idem**, *the same*, is often used in agreement with a subject, when a fresh statement is added with reference to some person or thing already mentioned. It is found :—

(a) Conjunctively when it translates the English *also*, *moreover*.

- My uncle, a man of the greatest integrity **and also** learning.      *Avunculus meus, vir innocentissimus idemque doctissimus.*

(b) Disjunctively to point a contrast, when it will stand for *yet* or *nevertheless*.

Yesterday I defended you; and Cras te defendi; atque **īdem**  
**yet** to-day I accuse you. hōdie accuso.

For other uses of *idem* and for *alius* Chapter XVI. should be consulted.

**261.** *The rest* is translated by **cēteri** or **rēliqui**.

**Reliqui** properly denotes what remain after some have been subtracted. **Ceteri** means *the others*. Both are definite, and must not be confused with **alii**, *others*, which is indefinite.

(a) The Helvetii surpass **the rest** Helvetii **reliquos** Gallos  
of the Gauls in valour. virtute praecedunt.

(b) He considered you alone, and Tibi uni consuluit, **ceteros**  
disregarded **the rest**. neglexit.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Equi donati dentes non inspiciuntur.

Do not look a gift horse in the mouth.

(The teeth of a given horse are not examined.)

Fēlicitas multos habet amicos.

Prosperity has many friends.

### EXERCISE 34.

1. The river was so swollen by the continual rains that no one was able to cross that night.

2. Hardly any one ventured to deny that a man's character changed at the approach<sup>1</sup> of old age.

3. Since there was no one to accuse<sup>2</sup> the prisoner, the jury acquitted him of this charge.

4. No orator has ever rendered such assistance to his friends as Tullius, and no one has ever attained to such fame.

5. You say you do not know which of the two brothers Caesar regards as his friend; it is plain, nevertheless, that both are ready to follow him even to the end of the world.

<sup>1</sup> Abl. abs.

<sup>2</sup> (86).

6. I demand no recompense from you for my labours ; I have refused also <sup>1</sup> to accept the large sums-of-money offered by our allies ; but the other generals, on whom you have bestowed the most honourable rewards, for a long time now have been plundering the provinces which the enemy has always spared.

7. On reaching the city the general, fearing lest his plans should be betrayed to the enemy, at once ordered the gates to be shut in order that none of the townspeople might go out.

8. I am the same, said he, as I have always been. From my boyhood I have hated the Romans and have been hated by them, and it is quite impossible for me to trust them now.

9. When the king made this reply, the indignation of the soldiers broke out afresh. Some threw down <sup>2</sup> their arms crying-out that their country was ruined, others in despair of their safety, <sup>3</sup> stealthily withdrew to their several <sup>4</sup> homes.

10. There is nothing so narrow-minded as the love <sup>5</sup> of riches ; there is nothing more honourable than the contempt of money.

11. Is the state-of-affairs <sup>6</sup> to-day different from what it was yesterday ? Are not my hopes and aims the same ? Then Catiline declared that I was unworthy to hold office, [and] yet <sup>1</sup> now he entreats me to stand for the consulship.

12. After Labienus had exhorted the soldiers to imagine that Caesar himself was present, under whose leadership they had so often overcome their enemies, he gave the signal for <sup>7</sup> battle. On the right wing, where the seventh legion had taken its stand, the enemy were at once driven back, [but] on the left the Gauls at first offered a more stubborn resistance ; then hearing a shout in their rear they began to take to flight on all sides.

---

<sup>1</sup> (260, a).    <sup>2</sup> (25).    <sup>3</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>4</sup> (247).

<sup>5</sup> (23).    <sup>6</sup> Res.    <sup>7</sup> Genitive.

CHAPTER XXXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—UBI, POSTQUAM, CUM.

**262.** A **temporal** clause is adverbial and defines the time of the sentence to which it is subordinate. It may refer to the past, the present or the future. As a general rule the temporal clause is in the indicative when it expresses time simply, and in the subjunctive when some further notion is involved, such as cause or purpose.

**263.** The English *when* may be translated by **ubi**, **postquam**, **simul ac** (or **atque**), or **ut** with the indicative.

- (a) **When** that day came, he said **Ubi** ea dies venit, negavit se  
he was unable to grant a pas- posse iter per provinciam  
sage through the province. dare.
- (b) He pitches his camp **as soon** **Ubi primum** in sicco potuit  
**as** he could (**when first**) castra locat.  
on dry ground.
- (c) And **when** (**after**) the bar- Quod **postquam** barbari fieri  
barians saw that this was animadverterunt, fuga sal-  
going on, they hastened to u-tem petere contenderunt.  
seek safety in flight.

**Ubi** and **postquam** are generally found with the perfect in Latin though the English may have the pluperfect. **Postquam** takes the pluperfect when the interval of time is expressed, or when stress is laid on the fact of the action being past.

- (d) I will begin the task **when** **Simul ac** vñeris (181),  
(**as soon as**) you come. opus incipiam.
- (e) **When** Pompeius saw that his Pompeius, **ut** equitatum suum  
cavalry was defeated, he pulsum vidit, acie excessit.  
quitted the field.

**264.** These conjunctions cannot be used without a verb, as the English *when* is. Either a verb must be inserted and **cum**

retained, or **cum** must be omitted and a noun in apposition or an adjective in agreement employed.

Some men **when old** put down Nonnulli **senes** suam culpam  
their own faults as due to old age. in senectutem conferunt.

*Cum senes* with no verb is impossible.

**265.** *As often as* is **quōties** or **quotiescunque** with the indicative.

**As often as** I speak, so often do **Quotiescunque** dico, toties  
I seem to myself to undergo a mihi videor in iudicium  
test of my abilities. ingenii venire.

**266. Cum, when,** takes the **indicative** (i.) if the temporal clause and the principal sentence are **contemporaneous**.

When disaster **comes**, then loss is **Cum venit** calamitas, tum  
incurred. detrimentum accipitur.

The *loss* and the *disaster* are simultaneous.

**267. (ii.)** If the principal statement is put inversely in the subordinate clause.

Hannibal had already moved his **Cum** Placentiam consul  
forces from their winter quar- **venit**, iam ex hibernis  
ters when the consul **came** to copias moverat Hannibal.  
Placentia.

The consul's arrival was in no sense the cause of Hannibal's movement, for the latter preceded it. *The consul came*, etc., is really an independent statement.

**268. (iii.)** When **time simply** is expressed.

**When** the enemy's forces **are** **Cum** hostium copiae non  
**close** at hand, cultivation of the longe **absunt**, agri culturā  
soil is abandoned. deseritur.

**269. (iv.)** To express **indefinite frequency**, with the perfect or pluperfect tense.

**Whenever** I have come to my **Cum** ad villam **vēni**, nihil  
country-house, I find pleasure agere me delectat.  
in doing nothing.



270. But in the majority of instances **cum** has the **subjunctive** of attendant circumstances. This is especially the case when the temporal clause describes a circumstance **prior** to the event narrated in the principal sentence. This circumstance may then in more or less degree be considered as the cause of the fact narrated in the principal sentence. The **cum**-clause often translates an English participle.

- (a) **Having met** Caesar on the road, they flung themselves at his feet. **Cum** Caesarem in itinere **convenissent** se ad pedes ei proiecerunt.

**Cum convenissent** supplies the place of a Latin perfect participle active.

- (b) **As soon as** there began to be a supply of fodder, he came to the camp. **Cum primum** pāhuli copia esse **inciperet**, ad exercitum venit.

- (c) **Being** at Athens I often used to hear Zeno. Zenonem **cum** Athenis **essem** persaepe audiebam.

271. There is a strong tendency to put the subjunctive with **cum**, even when the causal relation is hardly perceptible.

- When** at last he had extricated himself from the marshes, he pitches his camp. **Cum** tandem de paludibus **emersisset**, castra locat.

272. **Cum** sometimes translates *although* with a concessive clause (Ch. XXXVII.).

- Although** another more convenient route was pointed out, he chose the nearer road over the marshes. **Cum** aliud commōdius **ostenderetur** iter, propiorem viam per paludes eligit.

273. **Cum** followed by **tum** connects two clauses, as our *not only . . . but also*. The verb is generally in the indicative, and there is always some emphasis on the latter clause.

- You ought to take careful account **not only** of all the provinces, **but also** in particular of Sicily for very many reasons. **Cum** omnium provinciarum rationem diligenter habere debetis, **tum** praecipue Siciliae plurimis de causis.



## EXERCISE 35.

1. When he heard this he did not hesitate to attack at once.
2. The moment<sup>1</sup> I knew that you were sick I left<sup>2</sup> Athens, and sailed for Rome.
3. Men do not approach<sup>3</sup> more nearly to the gods at any other time than when they show mercy on others.
4. When Vercingetorix heard<sup>4</sup> that Caesar was coming, he raised<sup>5</sup> the siege and set out to meet him.
5. No one knows when<sup>6</sup> the enemy will attack the city.
6. I was beginning to write this letter just at the moment<sup>7</sup> when you asked the maidservant whether I was at home.
7. On the day before he left Rome, Catiline mustered all the most resolute of his friends, and explained what his designs<sup>8</sup> really were.
8. After the Gauls had seen that their land would be the seat of war, they changed<sup>5</sup> their plans with their usual fickleness, and sent ambassadors to Rome to sue for peace.
9. In my opinion you ought to have returned home as soon as you heard of your brother's death; you do not seem to me to understand fully the extent of the danger which is threatening us.
10. You ought, as far as you can, so to train your mind that you may meet with composure not only all the exigencies of life, but also the terrors of death itself.
11. Wishing to ascertain whether you or myself ought to be blamed in this matter, I asked Cicero which of us two had been the first to bring the plan forward.
12. Whenever I enter the palace I pity the lot of tyrants. For how can a man be happy whom all envy, and in whose life there is no place for affection or friendship, but an ever-present

---

<sup>1</sup> = as soon as.    <sup>2</sup> Use participle.    <sup>3</sup> Accedo.

<sup>4</sup> = was informed.    <sup>5</sup> Abl. abs.    <sup>6</sup> When is interrogative.

<sup>7</sup> (266).    <sup>8</sup> = what he really designed.

dread of death?<sup>1</sup> For it is impossible for him to love those whom he fears<sup>2</sup> or those by whom he thinks he is feared. Over the necks of such men, as the saying is,<sup>3</sup> there is always a sword hanging, so that they do not venture to trust even their own children.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—DUM, PRIUSQUAM.

**274.** Except in oratio obliqua, **dum, dōnec, quoad**, *while*, and **antequam, priusquam**, *before*, take the indicative when the idea is simply one of time.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) <b>While</b> we are learning to command, let us obey our superiors.      | <b>Dum</b> imperare <b>discimus</b> , melioribus pareamus.      |
| (b) The theory is the same <b>as long as</b> the case shall remain the same. | <b>Eadem</b> est ratio <b>donec</b> res eadem <b>manebunt</b> . |
| (c) <b>Before</b> day surprises us, let us sally forth.                      | <b>Antequam</b> opprimit lux, erumpāmus.                        |

*On the day before that* is **prīdie quam**; *on the day after that* **postrīdie quam**.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| (d) On the day after (that) I came to Athens. | <b>Postrīdie quam</b> Athenas veni. |
|---|-------------------------------------|

**275.** **Antequam** and **priusquam** may be separated, especially when the principal sentence is negative.

Nor shall we have moved from here <b>before</b> the senate shall have summoned Flaminius from Arretum.	<b>Nec ante</b> nos hinc moverimus <b>quam</b> Flaminium ab Arrētio patres acciverint.
--	--

<sup>1</sup> = to whom the dread of death is ever present.

<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive.      <sup>3</sup> = as they say (2, b).

**276.** If *while* in English has no reference to time, but simply points a contrast, **dum** must not be used. The Latin idiom will have two principal sentences with or without an adversative conjunction.

- (a) **While** I accuse Gaius you Gaium ego accuso, tu vero defend him. defendis.
- (b) **While** Cicero accuses him Eum Cicero accusat, defendit Pompeius defends him. Pompeius.

**277.** There is an idiomatic use of **dum** which is very common. When the temporal clause refers to a larger interval of time in the course of which something else happens, **dum** must have the present indicative. This construction is found even in oratio obliqua. While this **was going on** at Rome, Dum ea Romae **geruntur**, Sutricum was already being be- iam Sutricum ab Etruscis sieged by the Etruscans. obsidebatur.

**278.** If with these conjunctions there is an additional idea of **purpose** or **prevention**, the subjunctive mood is employed.

- (a) The consuls waited a few days Consules paucos morati dies until the soldiers came from sunt dum ab sociis veni- the allies. rent milites.

The consuls purposely awaited the arrival of the soldiers. The **dum**-clause is not one of time merely, but also denotes purpose.

But **dum**, **donec** or **quoad** meaning *until* may have the indicative when time alone is referred to.

- (b) Milo was in the senate on that Milo in senatu fuit eo die day until it was dismissed. quoad senatus dimissus est.
- (c) They took up their position in Prius in hostium castris the enemy's camp, before it constitērunt, quam ab his was possible for the latter to quid rei gereretur cog- discover what was going on. nosci posset.

**Priusquam** has the subjunctive because the enemy are prevented from discovering the movement before it is too late.

- (d) They do not let their generals go, until the latter have given them permission to take up arms. Non **prius** duces dimittunt, **quam** ab his **sit** concessum arma uti capiant.

**Concessum sit** is subjunctive because it expresses the purpose of the retention of the generals.

**279. Dum, dummodō and modō** are used with the subjunctive to denote *so long as, provided that*. If the clause is negative, **nē** is added.

- (a) Let them hate, **provided that** they fear. Oderint dum **metuant**.  
 (b) **So long as** I am **not** bound captive. Modo **ne** captivus **rēligē**.  
 (c) You will relieve me from great anxiety, **provided that** there is a wall between us. Magno me metu liberabis, **dummodo** inter me atque te murus **intersit**.

*Learn and translate :—*

Mutata inde belli sēdes est; ad Soram ex Samnio traductae legiones. Sōra ad Samnītes defecerat interfectis colonis Romanorum, quo cum prior Romanus exercitus ad ulciscendam civium necem recuperandamque coloniam magnis itineribus praevenisset, et sparsi per viam speculatores sequi legiones Samnitium nec iam procul abesse alii super alios nuntiarent, obviam itum hosti atque ancipiti proelio dimicatum est.

### EXERCISE 36.

1. And therefore, gentlemen-of-the-jury, before I begin to speak about the case itself, I make this request of you, that you should remember first how<sup>1</sup> my-client-here has served both the state and yourselves, and next what the character of the defendant has always been.

<sup>1</sup> Quantum.

2. Caesar wished to fortify the hill by means of entrenchments before the enemy could seize it, in order that he might give his weary troops an opportunity of rallying.<sup>1</sup>

3. While the general was wasting time in drawing up the line, the enemy suddenly raised a shout and charged into the midst of our ranks.

4. The soldiers, who had been left behind to guard the camp, were waiting till reinforcements came.

5. I think you had sufficient strength to finish this task yourself, and you ought not to have waited till I returned.

6. I did this while it was allowed, but discontinued it as long as my father was staying with you.

7. You may<sup>2</sup> laugh as much as you like, so long as you remember that you cannot injure me without<sup>3</sup> injuring yourself at the same time.

8. As long as I live I wish to devote myself to the study of nature,<sup>4</sup> and so I am hastening to return to the country, in order to<sup>5</sup> carry on these pursuits more easily.

9. Everybody knows that your brother made his will a few days before he died<sup>6</sup>; why then did you attempt to conceal this from me?

10. Plato and I walked in the garden for about three hours; it was wonderful how the mind was stimulated by the bodily exercise.

11. I heard of your brother's death by common<sup>7</sup> report, before you sent any of your household to tell me of your affliction.

12. Provided that you do not join Catiline, I do not care whether you favour the conservative or the democratic party.

13. How far I am right in this<sup>8</sup> is for<sup>9</sup> the wise to determine; probably these instances are much better-known to them than to myself.

---

<sup>1</sup> (224, b).    <sup>2</sup> Licet. (170).    <sup>3</sup> (90).    <sup>4</sup> = of things.    <sup>5</sup> (63).

<sup>6</sup> (18).    <sup>7</sup> = of men.    <sup>8</sup> = how I do this rightly.    <sup>9</sup> (165).

CHAPTER XXXVII.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.—QUAMQUAM, QUAMVIS, ETC.

**280.** A concessive clause is adverbial, and concedes something that contrasts with the principal sentence. The usual conjunction employed in English to introduce such clauses is *although*, and in Latin **quamquam**, **quāmvīs**, or **etsi**. The indicative is used in concessive clauses when the thing conceded is a **fact**; the subjunctive when the thing conceded is **impossible** or **imaginary**.

**281.** **Quamquam** is used with the indicative (except in oratio obliqua) to denote the concession of a **fact**. **Tamen** is frequently inserted in the principal sentence.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>(a) <b>Although</b> many great advantages <b>have resulted</b>, still the causes of love have not originated in the hope of these.</p> | <p><b>Quamquam</b> utilitates multae et magnae consecutae <b>sunt</b>, non sunt tamen ab earum spe causae diligendi profectae.</p> |
| <p>(b) <b>Although</b> you see these matters, yet I must not pass them over in my speech.</p>   | <p><b>Haec quamquam videtis</b>, tamen a me in dicendo praetereunda non sunt.</p>  |

**282.** But **quamvis** and **licet** and **cum**, when concessive, must have the subjunctive.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>(a) For <b>although</b> old age <b>may not be</b> burdensome, still it takes away one's freshness.</p>                             | <p>Senectus enim, <b>quamvis</b> non <b>sit</b> gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem.</p>                |
| <p>(b) <b>Though</b> nature indicates her wishes by so many signs, yet somehow or other we close our ears to her.</p>                 | <p><b>Cum</b> tot signis natura <b>declaret</b> quid velit, tamen obsurdescimus nescio quo modo.</p> |
| <p>(c) And <b>though</b> these things <b>may be thought</b> accidental, still they ensure the philosopher a good deal of respect.</p> | <p>Quae <b>licet</b> fortuita <b>putentur</b>, philosopho tamen plurimum venerationis acquirunt.</p> |



**283. Etsi** and **tametsi** follow the same rules as **si** (Ch. XLI.); when they contrast facts they have the indicative, when dealing with suppositions the subjunctive.

- (a) **Although** our army **had taken** the city, it was moved by longing for home.      *Noster exercitus, tametsi urbem ceperat, tamen desiderio suorum commovebatur.*
- (b) **Though** I **were** silent, the matter would speak for itself.      *Etsi taceam, res ipsa se declaret.*

**284. Ut** is occasionally used with the subjunctive in a concessive sense.

**Though** everything turned out contrary to their expectations, still they knew that they were very strong in ships.      *Ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse sciebant.*

**285. Qui** with the subjunctive is sometimes concessive.

You were not present, **though** you **had always been accustomed** to observe that day most carefully.      *Tu non affuisti, qui diligentissime semper illum diem solitus esses obire.*

**286. Quamquam** is sometimes a coordinating conjunction, when it is equal to **et tamen**, and *yet*.

**And yet** what am I to say?      *Quamquam quid loquar?*

**287. Quamvis** may be used to modify single words.

Caesar had achieved exploits in war which, **in spite of** their being disastrous to the state, were still great.      *Caesar res bello gesserat quamvis rei publicae calamitosas, at tamen magnas.*

Here **Quamvis** modifies **calamitosas**,

*Latin Proverbs.*

Praemonitus, praemunitus.

Forewarned, forearmed.

Dulce pomum, cum abest custos.

Stolen fruit is sweetest.

(Fruit is sweet when the guardian is absent.)

## EXERCISE 37.

1. Although Caesar saw that the Gauls were superior in number, he was unwilling to decline battle on that account.

2. Before you wrote to me, I had determined to do this.

3. We are ready to yield, provided that our lives are spared and no<sup>1</sup> harm is done to our wives and children.

4. Your father thinks that he will be acquitted; and yet I cannot help fearing that certain-people, whom I indeed do not wish to name, have received a bribe to condemn an innocent man.

5. Would that Cicero were here; perhaps he could say how we are to avoid these perils.

6. Any man, it appears, can bring forward any charges however<sup>2</sup> preposterous; the senators, who are threatening everybody with everything, will always believe them.

7. Granting that I have fallen into error in this matter, still I do not fully understand why you have charged me with treachery.<sup>3</sup>

8. Who is so narrow-minded as not to be moved by the death of Cato? In my opinion, although he may sometimes have opposed me, yet he always showed himself courteous and considerate.

9. Although Caesar had not ascertained what the designs<sup>4</sup> of the enemy were, he instructed Labienus not to<sup>5</sup> begin the battle before the reserves took up their position on the top of the hill.

<sup>1</sup> (169).      <sup>2</sup> Quamvis. (287).      <sup>3</sup> (153).

<sup>4</sup> = what the enemy designed.      <sup>5</sup> (167).

10. As soon as they saw the ambassadors, the consuls with their men advanced to meet them, in-order-to-prevent<sup>1</sup> their entering the city.

11. Although he may repeatedly promise never to return to Italy, there is no doubt that we shall see him sooner than<sup>2</sup> we all expect.

12. While the soldiers were greedily collecting the booty which the enemy had purposely left behind in order to check the speed of the pursuit, the king himself escaped<sup>3</sup> from their hands, and took refuge with his brother, who had brought an army into those parts to protect<sup>4</sup> his own kingdom. The latter received him kindly, although he was unwilling to endanger the safety of his people, and swore never to surrender him to his pursuers.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### NUMERALS.

**288.** The numerals **unus, duo, tres, quattuor** are declinable. In the plural **unus** is only used with nouns that are plural in form and singular in meaning, as **unae litterae**, *one letter* (epistle); **una castra**, *one camp*. The other cardinal numbers up to and including **centum** are indeclinable. **Ducenti, trēcenti**, etc., are declined in the plural like the adjective **bonus**.

**289. Unus** may emphasise

(a) Verbs.

Demosthenes **far** outshines all Demosthenes **unus** ēminet  
other orators. inter omnes ōratores.

(b) Adjectives in the superlative degree.

He was **by far** the most learned **Unus** omnium doctissimus  
of all. erat.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ne.    <sup>2</sup> (185).    <sup>3</sup> Participle.    <sup>4</sup> (224, c).

**290.** **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective; **mille milites**, 1000 *soldiers*; **mille militum**, of 1000 *soldiers*; but the plural **millia** is a noun of neuter gender; **millia**, **millium**, **millibus**.

Three thousand **soldiers**.

**Tria millia militum.**

**291.** To express an indefinitely large number, where we employ the number *a thousand*, the Latin idiom has **sescenti** (600) or **mille**.

(a) I have received **thousands** **Sescentas** epistulas accepi.  
of letters.

(b) Would it not have been better **Nonne** melius fuit **millies**  
to yield a **thousand times**? **cedere**?

**292.** So **tres** is used to signify a very small number.

I will tell you all this in **two** **Haec omnia in tribus** verbis  
words. **dicam.**

**293.** The **ordinal** numerals are employed in dates.

In the ninetieth year.

**Anno nonagēsimo.**

**294.** **Unus** and **alter** are employed in enumerations.

I have received now three letters **Accepi** tuas tres iam epis-  
from you, the **first** last year, **tulas, unam** anno proximo,  
the **second** yesterday, the third **alteram** hēri, tertiam  
to-day. **hodie.**

**295.** The **distributive** numerals are used (i.) when the number refers to each of a class.

The cars carried **six** men **apiece.** **Sēnos viros singuli**<sup>1</sup> currus  
vehabant.

**296.** (ii.) With nouns that are plural in form and singular in meaning. In this case **uni** is employed instead of **singuli**, and **trīni** is preferred to **terni**.

Three camps. **Trina castra.** Twenty houses. **Vicēnae aedes.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that **singuli** is always plural.

297. (iii.) In multiplications, joined with numeral adverbs.

(a) **Twice two** is four.

**Bis bīna** sunt quattuor.

(b) **Three times six.**

**Ter sena.**

298. The numeral adverbs **sēmel**, **bis**, **ter**, **quāter**, **quinquies**, etc., are used as in English.

(a) He was acquitted **five times**. **Quinquies absolutus** est.

(b) **Four times** nine.

**Quater novena.**

299. Fractions with *one* for numerator are denoted by ordinal numbers, generally with **pars**. **Tertia pars** is *one-third*, **quinta pars** is *one-fifth*. But **dīmidium** or **dimidia pars** is *one-half*. Fractions of which the numerator is one less than the denominator are denoted by cardinal numbers. **Tres partes** is *three-fourths*, **quinque partes**, *five-sixths*.

300. In writing compound numbers from thirteen to nineteen the smaller number comes first, as **septimus decimus**, *the seventeenth*. In numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine the larger number comes first, as **viginti duo**, *twenty-two*; if **et** is inserted the smaller precedes, as **duo et viginti**.

After ninety-nine the larger number comes first, sometimes with, sometimes without **et**, as **trecenti triginta tres**, *three hundred and thirty-three*, or **trecenti et triginta et tres**.

### *Latin Proverbs.*

**Canis timidus vehementius latrat quam mordet.**

His bark is worse than his bite.

(A timid dog barks more fiercely than he bites.)

**Annōsa vulpes non capitur lāqueo.**

Old birds are not caught with chaff.

(An old fox is not caught in a snare.)

## EXERCISE 38.

1. About three days after the surrender<sup>1</sup> of the town the Romans arrived to help the garrison.

2. Dionysius, who was tyrant of Syracuse<sup>2</sup> for thirty-eight years, seized the throne at the age of twenty-five.

3. Four months ago there were some who thought that you would stand for the consulship: to-day foolishly, not to say<sup>3</sup> shamelessly, you have decided to join our enemies.

4. There is no doubt that this victory has cost us many lives, and no one will venture to say that our gains have been commensurate<sup>4</sup> with our hopes.

5. He is so ignorant that he does not know what twice two is.

6. I prefer a hundred deaths<sup>5</sup> to such dishonour.

7. My uncle lived fifteen years at Syracuse, but he died at Naples at the age of seventy-two.

8. Your grandfather promises to return in three days or at the most in four; I am informed that he has sold three houses at the same price<sup>6</sup> as he bought them.

9. In my youth I read through the speeches of Cicero five times, for it is universally agreed that he is by far the most eloquent of Roman orators.

10. By Caesar's orders a list was drawn up of those who had marched through the country of the Allobroges, and those who had returned to their several homes after the capitulation. The former was found to be 68,000, the latter 10,000.

11. Mind you send me one of your slaves to tell me how you are and where you are staying.

12. When the battle-had-continued<sup>7</sup> without-a-break for more than six hours, our men encouraged by the arrival of the general

<sup>1</sup> (52).      <sup>2</sup> = of the Syracusans.      <sup>3</sup> (64).

<sup>4</sup> = that we have gained as much as we had hoped.

<sup>5</sup> = to die than to endure such dishonour.

<sup>6</sup> (158).      <sup>7</sup> Pass, impersonal.



began to press on more vigorously. The barbarians after losing <sup>1</sup> a third of their soldiers retreated, some to their camp, others to the nearest hills.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### THE DATE IN LATIN.

**301.** In the time of the Republic the Romans indicated a particular year by the names of the consuls who held office in it.

(a) He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius and Catulus      Romam venit Mario consule et Catulo.

(102 B.C.).

(b) In the consulship of Domitius and Claudius.      Domitio et Claudio consuli-  
bus.

Or they counted the number of years that had elapsed since the foundation of the city (**ab urbe condita** or A.U.C.), which is supposed to have taken place in 753 B.C. Any year of our era can therefore be translated into Latin. If the given year is before Christ, we must subtract it from 753 + 1; if it is after Christ, we must add it to 753; the result in either case will be the required date A.U.C.

(a) In the year 96 B.C.      **Anno ab urbe condita sexcentesimo quinquagesimo octavo** (658 A.U.C.).

(b) In the year 3 A.D.      **Anno ab urbe condita septingentesimo quinquagesimo sexto** (756 A.U.C.).

**302.** The names of the Roman months are Iānuārius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Māius, Iūnius, Iūlius, Augustus, September, Octōber, Nōvember, Dēcember. Iulius and Augustus before the time of Augustus Caesar were called Quintilis

---

<sup>1</sup> = having been slain.

and *Sextilis*. All these words are adjectives. After Julius Caesar had reformed the Roman calendar, the number of days in the months was the same as it is now. Each month had three fixed points. The first day was called **Kālendae**, the fifth **Nōnae** and the thirteenth **Idus**. But:—

In March, July, October, May  
The Nones are on the seventh day.

And the Ides, which fall eight days later, in these four months are on the fifteenth.

(a) On the 1st of January.      **Kalendis Ianuariis.**

(b) The 5th of December.      **Nonae Decembres.**

**303.** The other days were reckoned from these fixed points, counting backwards. An **inclusive reckoning** was adopted, *i.e.*, the days at each end were counted in; for instance, the 2nd of December would be called the fourth day before the Nones.

For dates falling between the Kalends and Nones, or between the Nones and Ides, subtract the given day from the date on which the Nones or Ides of the particular month fall, and add one (for the inclusive reckoning).

For dates falling between the Ides and the Kalends subtract the given day from the number of days in the month, and add two, one for the inclusive reckoning, and one because the Kalends are not on the last day of that month, but on the first day of the next.

So the 6th of January is the eighth day before the Ides of that month; the 30th January is the third day before the Kalends of February; the 2nd of March is the sixth day before the Nones of March.

(a) On January the 6th.

**Die octavo ante Idus Ianuarias.**

This form is very seldom used. Usually it appears by a kind of attraction as **ante diem octavum Idus Ianuarias**, or in abbreviation **a:d. viii Id. Ian.** This expression may be considered as one phrase and governed by another preposition as **ex** or **in**.

(b) **From the 30th of January to the 2nd of March.**

**Ex ante diem tertium Kalendas Februarias ad ante diem sextum Nonas Martias,**

*or*

**Ex a:d. iii Kal. Feb. ad a:d. vi Non. Mart.**

(c) I said in the senate that you had fixed October the 28th for the massacre of the aristocrats.

**Dixi ego in senatu caedem te optimatium contulisse in a:d. v Kal. Nov.**

**304.** The day immediately preceding the Kalends, Nones, or Ides was called **pridie Kalendas, Nonas, or Idus.**

On the 31st of December, in the consulate of Lepidus and Tullus, you had taken your stand in the place of assembly sword in hand.

**Pridie Kalendas Ianuarias, Lepido ac Tullo consulibus, in comitio cum gladio steteras.**

### EXERCISE 39.

1. Octavius was born on September<sup>1</sup> 23, B.C. 63, when Cicero was consul.

2. Most of us hope that peace will be made by the 7th of May.

3. The city had been founded on the 17th of May 800 years before.<sup>2</sup>

4. Having promised to come to Rome by the 1st he was treacherous enough<sup>3</sup> to break his word.

5. Cicero was elected consul in the year 64 B.C.

6. Caesar approached nearer to the city, and began to besiege it on the 13th of March.

<sup>1</sup> For names of months see (302).      <sup>2</sup> = ago.      <sup>3</sup> (88).

7. The elections which had been fixed for the 30th of May have been postponed to the 7th of July ; for my part I am never so ready as not to be glad of delay.

8. I sent two letters to you [asking you] not to assist Catiline with money or <sup>1</sup> anything else, <sup>2</sup> one on the 13th of November, the second on the 11th of January.

9. There is hardly any one of you who has not often read in history how Syracuse, a city which is by far the most beautiful of all in Sicily, was captured by Marcellus.

10. The matter was-discussed <sup>3</sup> from the 3rd of June to the 2nd of July ; for two-thirds of us voted for the destruction of Carthage, while <sup>4</sup> the rest thought that we ought to spare a city so ancient and so beautiful.

11. Let us enjoy life while the fates allow ; for who can tell where he is likely-to-be to-morrow ?

12. Scipio, who was a contemporary of Cato, was wont to say that he never was less alone than when he was alone or less-at-leisure than when he had nothing to do ; which is a proof that in solitude he devoted himself to reading, and that in his leisure-moments he was always thinking <sup>5</sup> about business.

## CHAPTER XL.

### CAUSAL CLAUSES.—QUOD SUBSTANTIVAL.

**305.** These subordinate adverbial clauses give the reason for the assertion made in the principal sentence. In Latin they may be in the indicative with the causal conjunctions **quod** or **quia**, *because*, and **quoniam** or **quandquidem**, *since*. The principal sentence often has **idcirco** or **eo** or **propterea** to balance the conjunction.

<sup>1</sup> (169).

<sup>2</sup> = another thing.

<sup>3</sup> Pass. impersonal.

<sup>4</sup> (276).

<sup>5</sup> Cogito.

- (a) He disbanded his soldiers, **because** you thought a limit should be set to the length of his command. **Quod** imperii diuturnitati modum statuendum putavistis, milites dimisit.
- (b) **Because** nature cannot be changed, on that account true friendships are everlasting. **Quia** natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt.
- (c) **Since** you have always been greedy for renown, you must wipe away that stain. **Quoniam** semper avidi laudis fuistis, delenda est vobis illa macula.

**306.** **Cum** with the subjunctive is often causal (270).

And **since** this is so, I approve of your bill. **Quae cum** ita sint, istam legem laudo.

**307.** Instead of **cum** the relative pronoun with the subjunctive may be employed. The relative is sometimes strengthened by **quippe**.<sup>1</sup>

- (a) O wretched old man, **since** he has not seen that he ought to despise death. O miserum senem, **qui** mortem contemnendam esse non **viderit**.
- (b) Nor indeed is he (the flatterer) easily recognised, **since** he often flatters actually by opposing you. Nec enim facillime agnoscitur, **quippe qui** etiam adversando saepe **assentetur**.

**308.** The **subjunctive** is used with **quod** and **quia** :—

(i.) When the causal clause is in **Oratio Obliqua** (indirect statement).

He said that because nature could not be changed, sincere friendships were everlasting. Dixit **quia** natura mutari non **posset**, veras amicitias esse sempiternas.

<sup>1</sup> **Quippe** is derived from **qui**, adv. (108) and the enclitic **-pe**. It is used both as an adverb and a conjunction.

**309.** (ii.) When the reason is not given by the writer as necessarily true, but as being the opinion or statement of some one else. The reason is reported, and hence this construction has been called **virtual Oratio Obliqua**.

(a) These old men were wont to complain because (*as they said*) they were deprived of pleasures.      Hi senes solebant queri quod voluptatibus **carerent**.

This is very common when the main verb is one of **praising, accusing or complaining**.

(b) Panaetius praises Africanus because (*as he says*) he was temperate.      Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod **fuerit** abstinens.

**310.** This virtual Oratio Obliqua is also used with relative pronouns.

Caesar kept asking the Aedui for the corn which (*as he said*) they had promised.      Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod **essent** polliciti flagitabat.

**311.** To denote a reason rejected as untrue, **non quo** or **non quod** with the **subjunctive** is used.

I have done this, not because I hate you, but because I love myself.      **Non quo** (*or quod*) te **oderim**, sed quia me ipsum amo hoc feci.

**312.** **Quod** may introduce a noun-clause and translate the English *the fact that*.

With what feelings, pray, ought you to bear the **fact that** the safety of our allies is being brought into the greatest danger?      **Quod** salus sociorum summum in periculum vocatur, quo tandem animo ferre debetis?

Here the **quod**-clause is the object of **ferre** and not causal.



*Latin Proverbs.*

Addere calcāria sponte currenti.

To spur the willing steed.

(To put spurs to one running of his own accord.)

Aegrōto dum anima est, est spes.

While there is life, there is hope.

(While there is breath to the sick man, there is hope.)

## EXERCISE 40.

1. Brutus denied that he was sorry for <sup>1</sup> having slain Caesar.
2. I ask you to interview Pompeius because, as all understand, you have always held the same political opinions as he has.
3. You complain because [as you say] this worthless fellow is richer than you are.
4. Who is so foolish, ignorant though he may be, as to think that we can finish this task in three days?
5. We ought always to do what we can for one another; <sup>2</sup> it is not the part <sup>3</sup> of friends to wait till we are asked.
6. I do not hesitate to tell you what my ideas are on-the-subject-of death, because the <sup>4</sup> nearer I am to it the better I seem to understand what it is. \*
7. I purposely pass over the fact that you yourself demanded no recompense for your labours; and yet <sup>5</sup> this very circumstance is a strong proof that you are innocent.
8. He was complaining because [as he said] there were very-few whom he could trust.
9. No poet ever valued the writings of his friends more highly <sup>6</sup> than his own.
10. There was added to this the fact that the safety of all who were then engaged in business throughout Asia was at stake.

---

<sup>1</sup> (308).    <sup>2</sup> (118).    <sup>3</sup> (146).    <sup>4</sup> (192, c).    <sup>5</sup> (286).    <sup>6</sup> (158).

11. The officers declined battle, because they thought that they ought not to engage with the enemy in the absence of the commander.

12. In the midst of these dangers your father alone showed himself a man of courage. Entering<sup>1</sup> the palace, which was already blazing fiercely, he bade the king follow him. The latter, who from fear of death seemed to pray for death itself, could not be induced by threats or prayers to move from the spot. So the other,<sup>2</sup> raising him on his shoulders, just as Aeneas of old is said to have rescued his father, snatched him forth from the midst of the flames.

## CHAPTER XLI.

### CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

**313.** A statement is made **conditionally** when it is not given as an absolute fact, but is said to depend on something else happening. This previous condition is generally expressed by a subordinate adverbial sentence introduced by the conjunction *if* or *unless*. The sentence which contains the statement is called the **apodosis** or consequent, the clause which contains the condition is called the **protasis** or antecedent.

**314.** As a general rule, it may be said that if the apodosis has the **indicative** or **imperative**, the protasis has the **indicative**; if the apodosis has the **subjunctive**, the protasis has the **subjunctive**. The following examples will give the chief regular types.

**315.** (i.) Both apodosis and protasis have the **indicative** when the statement is quite general, and nothing is said about fulfilment or non-fulfilment.

---

<sup>1</sup> (46).      <sup>2</sup> (233).

- (a) If we flee from anxiety, we must flee from virtue. Si curam fugimus, virtus fugienda est.
- (b) If he fled from anxiety, he fled from virtue. Si curam fugit, virtutem fugit.
- (c) If I **have** anything, I will give it. Si quid habebō, dabo.
- (d) If we **flee** from care, we shall have to flee from virtue. Si curam fugiemus, virtus fugienda erit.

\* \* If the apodosis is **future**, the protasis, unlike the English idiom, must also be in the **future**.

- (e) If you **do** this, I shall be very grateful. Si hoc feceris, magnam habebo gratiam.

If the apodosis depends on the completion of the protasis, the latter must be in the **future perfect** tense.

The apodosis may be in the **imperative**.

- (f) If you love me, reply. Si me amas, responde.

**316.** (ii.) The apodosis and protasis both have the **present subjunctive** when the time is present or future, and when the supposition, and therefore the principal statement, is regarded as **possible**.

- (a) If I should have anything (which is possible), I would give it. Si quid habeam, dem.
- (b) Should I deny this (which I might), I should certainly be lying. Si hoc negem, certe mentiar.

**317.** (iii.) The apodosis and protasis both have a **historic** tense of the **subjunctive**, when it is implied that the supposition is **contrary to the fact**. The imperfect is used with reference to continuous action in the past or present; the pluperfect is used with reference to the past alone.

- (a) If I had anything (which I have not), I would give it. Si quid haberem, darem.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (b) I would not object, if I had confidence in myself ( <i>which I have not</i> ).    | Ego non <b>grāvarer</b> , si mihi ipsi <b>confidērem</b> .                        |
| (c) If I had had anything, I would have given it.                                     | Si quid <b>habuissem</b> , <b>dedissem</b> .                                      |
| (d) And no one would have survived, had not the consuls given the signal for retreat. | Nec quisquam <b>superfuisset</b> nisi consules receptui signum <b>dedissent</b> . |

**318.** *Nisi* is used for *if not* to denote an exception, when the emphasis of the negative is on the **whole sentence**; *si non* is used to denote a negative condition, when the emphasis is on a **single word**.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) If I had not heard about you, I would not have returned. | <b>Nisi</b> de te audivissem, non rediissem.     |
| (b) If you have not done that, I will do it myself.          | <b>Si</b> tu id <b>non</b> feceris, ipse faciam. |

Here the emphasis is on **feceris**.

**319.** *If* in dependent questions must not be translated by **si**. Tell me **if** you are unhurt. Dic mihi **num** sis incolumis.

### EXERCISE 41.

1. If fruits are unripe, they are with difficulty gathered from the trees.
2. If it had been allowed, he would have rushed against the foe.
3. If you were to fall into debt a second time, both your mother and I would be unwilling to help you in your distress.
4. The crafty<sup>1</sup> judge asked the slave if he envied the life of his master.
5. I should have come here before, if I had been informed that the loyalty of our allies was wavering.

<sup>1</sup> (42, d).

6. If any one were to say that I am not deeply affected by the death of Cato, he would certainly fall into error.

7. If they acquit the prisoner, who has been already condemned by the votes of all respectable persons, I shall never trust a jury again.

8. Unless I had convinced myself from my youth that nothing in life ought to be preferred to honour and virtue, I should never have exposed myself for your welfare to such <sup>1</sup> perils as these.

9. Hannibal is sending ambassadors to sue for peace, who would not be doing so if he did not believe it <sup>2</sup> to be expedient.

10. If Metellus were here now, he would be the first to protect me; but perhaps <sup>3</sup> if I am not obeyed my soldiers will be; they are not accustomed to yield to violence.<sup>4</sup>

11. I have expressed my thanks to your brother, as I ought; for I understand how great the danger which threatens us is, and how much <sup>5</sup> easier it was to remain at home than to return to the province.

12. Mind you are in Rome by the 26th of September,<sup>6</sup> if you wish to stand for the consulship. Many worthy citizens have promised to help you.

## CHAPTER XLII.

### CONDITIONALS IN INDIRECT STATEMENT—QUOD SI, SIN, SI MINUS.

**320.** If the conditional statement is dependent on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, the apodosis must always have the **infinitive** mood, and the protasis, which is a subordinate clause, must always have the **subjunctive**.

<sup>1</sup> = to these so great perils.

<sup>2</sup> It stands for *peace*.

<sup>3</sup> Fortasse.

<sup>4</sup> = threats.

<sup>5</sup> (192).

<sup>6</sup> (303).

The following examples will correspond with those in the preceding chapter and should be compared with them :—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (i.) (a) He says that, if we flee from anxiety, we must flee from virtue.        | Dicit, si curam <b>fugiamus</b> , virtutem fugiendam <b>esse</b> .                     |
| (b) He said that, if he fled from anxiety, he fled from virtue.                  | Dixit se virtutem <b>fugere</b> , si curam <b>fugeret</b> .                            |
| (c) He says that, if he has anything, he will give it.                           | Dicit se, si quid <b>habeat</b> , daturum <b>esse</b> .                                |
| (d) They said that, if they fled from care, they would have to flee from virtue. | Dixerunt <b>fore ut</b> virtus sibi fugienda <b>esset</b> , si curam <b>fugerent</b> . |

The tense of the protasis, primary or historic, depends on the tense of the verb of *saying*.

**321.** If the protasis has the **future perfect** (315, e) in the direct statement, in the indirect statement it must have the **perfect subjunctive** if primary, the **pluperfect** if historic.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) He says that he will be very grateful if you <b>do</b> this.   | Dicit se si hoc <b>feceris</b> magnam habiturum gratiam.  |
| (b) He said that he would be very grateful if you <b>did</b> this. | Dixit se si hoc <b>fecisses</b> magnam habiturum gratiam. |

**322.** Under type (ii.) (316), possible supposition, the following will be the regular forms :—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) He says that, if he should have anything, he would give it.        | Dicit se, si quid <b>habeat</b> , daturum <b>esse</b> .            |
| (b) He said that, if he should deny that, he would certainly be lying. | Dixit se, si illud <b>negaret</b> , certe <b>mentiturum esse</b> . |

**323.** Under type (iii.) (317), impossible supposition.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) He said that, if he had anything, he would be giving it. | Dixit se, si quid <b>haberet</b> , daturum <b>esse</b> . |
|--|--|



- (b) He said that he would not be objecting, if he had confidence in himself. Negavit se **gravaturum esse**, si sibi ipse **confideret**.
- (c) He said that, if he had had anything, he would have given it. Dixit se, si quid **habuisset**, **daturum fuisse**.

### 324. But if is quod si.

But if I err in this, I err willingly. **Quod si** in hoc erro, libenter erro.

325. Except when *but if* introduces a second conditional clause antagonistic to one already given; then if this clause is affirmative, **sin** must be used; if negative, **si non** with a verb or **si minus** without.

- (a) If I am at home my mind is abroad, **but if** I am abroad my mind stays at home. Si domi sum foris est animus, **sin** foris sum, animus domi est.
- (b) If you do this I shall be very grateful, **but if** you do not I will pardon you. Si hoc feceris magnam habebo gratiam, **si non** feceris, ignoscam, or **si minus**, ignoscam.

For **sive** and **seu** consult (137).

### *Latin Proverbs.*

Optat ephippia bos.

The ox would turn saddle-horse.

(The ox desires horse-cloths.)

Nunquam bonus filius ex malo patre.

Like father, like son.

(There never is a good son from a bad father.)

### EXERCISE 42.

1. The centurion could not be prevented from declaring that the city would have been captured within ten days, had the consul been fit to command.

2. I told you a thousand times what would happen if you spared<sup>1</sup> the ungrateful Greek.

3. It does not matter to you how you get hold of the money, provided you do get hold of it.

4. Before I speak about the city of Corinth, I think I must say a few [words] about the greatness, antiquity and usefulness of the province.

5. If you understood who had written these two letters, you would not say this.

6. Pompeius said that he would not have returned to Athens on the 1st of March, unless he had received your letter.

7. If the fruits are unripe you will gather them with difficulty; but if they are ripe they will fall down of their own accord.

8. Every one knows that if it were possible I would be the first to avail myself of this opportunity.

9. But if Cato himself were asked his opinion about the verdict, he would say the same as I did, that it was quite impossible to acquit the defendant.

10. You will do a favour to both of us, if you explain how your father had<sup>2</sup> that fellow removed.

11. Whether<sup>3</sup> you affirm or deny this, no one doubts that, after the town was taken, you compelled the Gauls to bring the corn which (as you said) they had promised.

12. Some one will say that if anything happens to Pompeius you will have to leave Rome at once. How few there are who remember how much we owe our country!

---

<sup>1</sup> (321).    <sup>2</sup> (227, b).    <sup>3</sup> (137).

## CHAPTER XLIII.

## VARIATIONS IN CONDITIONALS.—POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

**326.** In conditional sentences of type (iii.) the same tense is not always found in the protasis as in the apodosis. It depends on the meaning required.

You would say that all the more, if      Tum<sup>1</sup> magis id **diceres**, si  
you had lately been present in      nuper in hortis Scīpionis  
the gardens of Scipio.      **affuisses.**

**327.** When the verb in the apodosis is **modal**, or a combination of **future participle**, **gerundive** or **adjective** with the auxiliary **sum**, it is generally in the **indicative**, though the protasis has the subjunctive.

(a) You ought to have pardoned      **Debuisti**, etiam si afuissem,  
me, even if I had been absent      tamen mihi ignoscere.  
(which I was not).

**Debuisti ignoscere** is equivalent to **ignovisses**.

(b) If Pompeius were a private individual, still he **would have**      Si Pompeius privatus esset,  
had to be chosen for so important a war.      tamen ad tantum bellum  
is **erat** diligendus.

(c) If Milo had thought thus, it **would have been preferable** for him to offer his      Si ita Milo putasset, **optā-**  
throat to Clodius.      **bilius** ei fuit dare iugulum  
Clōdio.

**328.** The **subjunctive** is sometimes seen in the apodosis, while the protasis has the indicative.

May I perish if I do not speak the truth.      **Peream** si vera non loquor.

This does not violate the rule. **Peream** is an optative subjunctive, and equivalent to **volo perire**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Tum in this example is a kind of correlative to **si**, instead of the more common **ita si**.

**329.** The apodosis is often found with the protasis implied only, or expressed by some phrase. The subjunctive is then called **potential**.

- (a) Every other race **would** surely **have been overwhelmed** by such a weight of calamity. Nulla profecto alia gens tanta mole cladis non **obrūta esset**.

**Obruta esset** is potential subjunctive. The protasis is expressed by the phrase tanta mole cladis, which is equivalent to **si tanta mole cladis affecta esset**.

- (b) Who **would** then **venture** to say that Oppianicus was guilty? Quis tum **auderet** dicere nocentem esse Oppianicum?

- (c) I **would** sooner **have said** that he had spoken falsely. Citius **dixerim** eum falsa locutum esse.

**330.** The indicative is used instead of the potential subjunctive in the case of modal verbs and neuter adjectives with **est**.

- (a) You **should** have come. **Debuisti** venire.  
(b) It **would be** tedious to enumerate the rest. Longum **est** persequi cēteros.

**So facile est**, *it would be easy*; **melius fuerat**, *it would have been better*.

**331.** In a consecutive or dependent interrogative clause our *would have* must be translated by the combination of the **future participle** with the **perfect subjunctive** of **sum**.

And Hannibal was so hard pressed by scarcity of supplies that he **would have returned** to Gaul, if the next consuls waged war on the same methods. Adeoque inopiā est coactus Hannibal ut Galliam **repetiturus fuerit**, si insequentes consules eisdem artibus bellum gererent.

*Learn and translate :—*

*Cicero's comparison of Anthony with Caesar.*

Quod si non metuis viros fortes egregiosque cives, quod a corpore tuo prohibentur armis, tui te, mihi crede, diutius non

ferent. Quae est autem vita dies et noctes suos timere? nisi vero aut maioribus habes beneficiis obligatos, quam ille quosdam habuit ex eis, a quibus est interfectus, aut tu es ulla re cum eo comparandus. Fuit in illo ingenium, ratio, memoria, litterae, cura, cōgitatio, diligentia; res bello gesserat quamvis rei publicae calamitosas, at tamen magnas; multos annos regnare meditatus, magno labore, multis periculis quod cogitarat effecerat.

### EXERCISE 43.

1. You say that, if the senators have decided that it is their pleasure that you go into exile, you will obey.

2. If I had punished Catiline and crushed the conspiracy at its birth,<sup>1</sup> many would say that I had acted<sup>2</sup> illegally.

3. Who would hesitate in such an emergency to wait until the general arrives at the camp?

4. Without the orders<sup>3</sup> or knowledge of Pompeius, his friends did what each one would have wished his friends to do in such circumstances.

5. If you had delayed a single day, we would have had to withdraw our soldiers from the town.

6. So sudden was the charge<sup>4</sup> of the enemy that our men would have taken to flight, if the arrival of the general had not restored their courage.

7. I should hardly be inclined<sup>5</sup> to believe that the ships had their-full<sup>6</sup> complement.

8. It would be tedious now for me to tell how they escaped from the hands of the enemy.

9. Did not the tyrant at least fear the threats of men, if not the power of heaven?

10. I think that I have said enough [to show] why this war

<sup>1</sup> = being born.      <sup>2</sup> = that it had been done.      <sup>3</sup> Abl. abs.

<sup>4</sup> = the enemy charged so suddenly.      <sup>5</sup> (329, c).      <sup>6</sup> (244).

had to be waged ; it remains for me to say a few [words] about the selection<sup>1</sup> of a commander.

11. I have asked you, and that<sup>2</sup> very often, to come with me to the house of Cicero. You ought to have gone long-ago.

12. If our city has at any time shone in literary pursuits, it does so<sup>3</sup> at the present moment. Every one has heard of the name and fame of your friend Valerius, and very many have read his writings, which you and I have always commended. Several have come almost from the ends of the world to listen to your father, who is treated with the greatest respect by all, and not only by those who really desire to learn something, but also those who pretend to cultivate the Muses.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

### COMPARISON AND COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

**332.** When two nouns or pronouns are closely compared together, the **ablative of comparison** is found after adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree.

Who at any time was more learned      Quis **hoc homine** unquam  
**than this man ?**      doctior fuit ?

This construction can only be used when the first noun is in the nominative or accusative case, and not necessarily then.

**333.** Otherwise the conjunction **quam** is employed.

I will give you a better book than      Tibi meliorem librum **quam**  
your brother.      fratri tuo dabo.

**334.** With numerals **plus, amplius, more, and minus, less,** are used adverbially, and the noun is put in the case required by the context.

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive.

<sup>2</sup> (232).

<sup>3</sup> Repeat verb.



- (a) More than three hundred were captured. **Trēcenti** amplius capti sunt.

**Trēcenti** is nominative to **capti sunt**, and **amplius** is adverbial.

- (b) After more than a third of the Gauls had been killed. **Plus tertia parte** Gallorum interfecta.

**Plus** is adverbial and does not affect the case of **parte**, which, with **interfecta**, is an ablative absolute.

**335. Quam** frequently joins two adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree. The English idiom only has the first in the comparative.

- (a) The enemy will carry on the contest with more spirit than **prudence**. **Ferocius quam consultius** hostes rem gerent.
- (b) His plans are more rapid than **safe**. **Consilia eius celeriora quam tutiora** sunt.

**336.** The following example should be noted :—

The assistance they brought was **not proportionate** to their number. **Maius quam pro** numero auxilium ferebant.

(Literally, greater assistance than in proportion to their number.)

**337. Quam** is frequently used with superlatives.

- (a) Jugurtha is arming **as many** troops **as possible**. **Iugurtha quam maximas potest** copias armat.

The verb **possum** may be omitted.

- (b) He wished to be friendly to **as many** states **as possible**. **Civitatibus quam plurimis** amicus esse volebat.

**338.** Comparative clauses are in the indicative when the contrast is between actual **facts**.

My sister is as happy as I am. **Tam beata soror mea est quam** ego.

**339.** Other conjunctions used with comparative clauses in the indicative are **ut** with **ita** or **sic** as correlative in the principal sentence, and **ac** or **atque** with **p̄rinde**, **iuxtā**, **p̄rīter** or **ālīter** as correlative. The verb in the clause is sometimes implied.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) I will speak <b>as</b> I think.  | <i>Ita dicam <b>ut</b> sentio.</i>                                   |
| (b) The matter turned out <b>ex-</b><br><b>actly as</b> I had hoped.                 | <i>Res evenit <b>perinde ac</b> sper-</i><br><i>averam.</i>          |
| (c) You think <b>differently from</b><br><b>what</b> I do concerning this<br>matter. | <i>De hac re tu <b>aliter</b> sentis</i><br><i><b>atque</b> ego.</i> |

**340.** **Ita ut** with the subjunctive is used **restrictively** (90). You cannot save the city **without** **saving** the consul. *Non **ita** urbem servare potes  
**ut non** consulem serves.*

**341.** **Ut** is also found with single words and phrases in this restrictive meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) He was very faithful, <b>for</b> a<br><b>slave</b> .           | <i>Fidelissimus erat, <b>ut servus</b>.</i>                             |
| (b) Fabius, <b>for</b> a Roman, had great<br>literary attainments. | <i>Multae in Fābio, <b>ut</b> in homine<br/>Romano, litterae erant.</i> |

#### EXERCISE 44.

1. A fiercer contest ensued than was to-be-expected-from<sup>1</sup> the number of the combatants.

2. Although I was informed that, for a Theban,<sup>2</sup> he was fairly proficient in speaking, he seemed to be somewhat confused.

3. The Gauls reply that they will regard Caesar as an enemy, unless he leaves the town at once.

4. Gabinius, a man of greater bravery than prudence, was chosen by the soldiers to be their leader.

5. He confessed that he would not have gone away so soon, if he had known that you were here.

6. A somewhat-difficult question now arises, whether we ought at any time to prefer new friends to old, as we are wont to prefer young horses to old.

7. You say that I ought to make use of your money as my own; but I reply that I spare it just as I do my own.

8. Antony, who is said to have more than five thousand soldiers with him, promises to relieve the city within twenty days.

9. After the death<sup>1</sup> of Hiero, who for more than forty years had been the friend and ally of the Roman people, his grandson, a boy of fifteen years, ascended the throne.

10. Would it not be better to die a thousand times on the field-of-battle than to drag out, as you [do], a life of-dishonour<sup>2</sup> and infamy in a foreign land?

11. A certain slave who was not without craft,<sup>2</sup> but, as is sometimes the case, honest and upright, reported the matter to his master, who, thinking that there was need of haste, betook himself to his country-house before the conspirators could carry out their plan.

12. Although the king on his dying bed<sup>3</sup> had ordered that when the city surrendered<sup>4</sup> mercy should be shown to all, the officers were unable to prevent the soldiers from avenging his death; and so, on account of the guilt of one, vengeance was wreaked on the townspeople, armed and unarmed alike.<sup>5</sup>

## CHAPTER XLV.

### COMPARATIVE CLAUSES—*Continued.*

**342.** If the assertion in the principal sentence is contrasted with an **imaginary** case, the verb in the comparative clause

<sup>1</sup> After Hiero died.      <sup>2</sup> Adj.      <sup>3</sup> = already about to die.

<sup>4</sup> = surrender having been made. Abl. abs.

<sup>5</sup> = armed like as unarmed.

must be in the **subjunctive**. The tense of the latter will be primary when the supposed case is regarded as possible, historic when it is regarded as impossible. Such subordinate clauses in English are introduced by *as if* or *as though*, and in Latin by **tamquam** and **vĕlut** (with or without **si**), **ut si**, **quăsi**, **ac si**.

- (a) The senate was seized with fear, **as if** the enemy **were** already at the gates. Patres metus cepit, **velut si** iam ad portas hostes **essent**.
- (b) I will answer you **just as if** you were present (*which you are not*). Tibi **perinde** respondebo **quasi** adesses.
- (c) The soldier, **pretending to be** releasing his foot from a knot, kept the crowd waiting. **Tamquam** pedem e nōdo **laxaret**, miles turbam moratus est.

**343.** These conjunctions may stand with phrases and single words.

- (a) The rest, **just as though they** had lost a father, feared everything. Ceteri, **velut patre amisso**, omnia timebant.
- (b) You were lying concealed **like** a snake in the grass. **Tamquam serpens** in herba **lātebas**.

**344.** **Tamquam** and **quasi**, like **quidam** (257), are inserted to modify metaphors, or to show that a word is not quite appropriate.

- (a) They are connected, **as it were**, by a sort of affinity. **Quasi** cognatione **quadam** inter se continentur.
- (b) My compassion formerly known to all, but now **almost** forgotten. **Misericordia mea nota quon-**  
**dam omnibus, nunc quasi** intermissa.
- (c) He gives his friend **as it were** handles for criticism. **Tamquam ansas** ad reprehendum dat amico.

*Latin Proverbs.*

Ut sēmentem feceris, ita mētes.

As you sow, so shall you reap.

Vitiat lapidem longum tempus.

Constant dripping wears away a stone.

(Long time rots a stone.)

## EXERCISE 45.

1. Whenever I regard my grandfather, I seem to see in him a certain radiance as it were of good-will and affection.

2. For my part, out of all the gifts<sup>1</sup> which fortune has bestowed on me, I have nothing which can<sup>2</sup> compare with the friendship of Cicero; but most of you know that I have always loved him as a second father.

3. In the absence of the general the officers carried out their duties, just as if he were present.

4. I should like you to manage this business just as though your own interests were at stake.

5. Hardly any one, judges, is ignorant how<sup>3</sup> animals, at the prompting<sup>4</sup> of hunger, generally return to that place where they have previously fed.

6. He was a man who by common<sup>5</sup> consent would have been pronounced equal to empire, if he had never attained<sup>6</sup> it.

7. As soon as the flag was displayed, a shout was raised by our men and a rush made on the enemies' camp, as though<sup>7</sup> the victory were already won.

8. We will put down to you all<sup>8</sup> the innovations which the consul, just as if he were the originator, is introducing into the state.

<sup>1</sup> Res.    <sup>2</sup> Subjunctive (86).    <sup>3</sup> Ut (141).    <sup>4</sup> = warned by hunger.

<sup>5</sup> = of all.    <sup>6</sup> = if he had never ruled.

<sup>7</sup> (343, a).    <sup>8</sup> = whatever of new.

9. You have conducted yourself during these-recent<sup>1</sup> years as though you had power to disregard and infringe the laws, but I warn you that you will soon have to render an account.

10. On arriving at the foot of the mountains the spy, pretending<sup>2</sup> not to recognise the homestead where he had been born and bred, asked where in the world he was.

11. All the time<sup>3</sup> that I stayed with your brother at Corinth I lived as it were in my own home.

12. After having courteously addressed his friends according<sup>4</sup> to the age and rank of each, he entreated them to seek safety in flight, and not<sup>5</sup> to increase the anger of the enemy by remaining.

## CHAPTER XLVI.

### TRANSLATIONS OF THE ENGLISH VERBAL NOUN.

**345.** The following examples of the translation of the English verbal noun in -ing should be carefully examined :—

(a) Why do you waste time in Cur in **dicendo** tempus  
talking ? teris ? (222).

(b) Who, with the idea of **gaining** Quis, **consequendi** quaestus  
a profit, was able to visit so studio, tot loca adire po-  
many places ? tuit ?

**Consequendi quaestus** is gerundive construction (224).

(c) An opportunity of **pardoning** Facultas **ignoscendi** captivis  
the captives was given. dabatur (223).

(d) I prefer **riding** to walking. Malo **equitare** quam am-  
bulare (217).

(e) You are late in **returning** Sero domum **redis**.  
home.

<sup>1</sup> Hicce.    <sup>2</sup> (342, c).    <sup>3</sup> = how much of time.

<sup>4</sup> = as age and rank was to each.    <sup>5</sup> (169).



- (f) I cannot help **replying**. Non facere possum **quin re-spondeam** (93).
- (g) And we were not far from **taking** the city. Nec multum afuit **quin urbem caperemus** (93).
- (h) What prevents you from **re-  
plying**? Quid obstat **quominus re-spondeas?** (97).
- (i) The town was on the point of **being taken**. In eo erat **ut urbs caperetur**.
- (k) I am on the point of **laughing**. In eo est **ut rideam**.  
In eo est is impersonal.
- (l) **On arriving** at the camp he summoned the centurions. Cum ad castra **perventum esset**, centuriones convocavit.  
Perventum esset is passive impersonal (38).
- (m) **Instead of replying**, you are silent. Cum **respondere debeas**, taces (282).
- (n) **So far are you from replying** that you are silent. Tantum abest **ut respondeas ut taceas** (92).
- (o) I made a long speech **without persuading** any one. Orationem longam habui **neque** tamen cuiquam **persuasi**.
- (p) I congratulate you **on being absent**. Tibi quod abes gratulor.
- (q) They complained of **being deprived of pleasures**. Querebantur quod **voluptatibus carerent** (309).
- (r) You have no reason for **doing this**. Non habes **cur hoc facias**.
- (s) The ambassadors returned **without accomplishing anything**. Legati **re infecta** redierunt.  
Re infecta is ablative absolute, *the matter having been not-carried out*.
- (t) You cannot condemn the one **without acquitting** the other. Non potestis alterum **condemnare ut non alterum absolvatis** (90).

## EXERCISE 46.

1. On hearing this, the consuls sent ambassadors to entreat Caesar to approach no<sup>1</sup> nearer to the city, but we cannot help fearing that they will return without accomplishing<sup>2</sup> their purpose.

2. I wish, said he, to undertake this case, and no one shall prevent me from defending my friends.

3. So far is he from feeling-any-shame for his cowardice that he has dared to stand for the consulship a second time.

4. Provided that there is a wall between me and you, I shall not complain of your having<sup>3</sup> broken the laws.

5. Instead of returning to the farmhouse where he had been born and bred, he preferred starving in a filthy hut at Rome.

6. While the general was<sup>4</sup> wasting time in arguing, the opportunity of seizing the hill was lost.

7. I do not think you have any grounds<sup>5</sup> for complaint; you cannot injure me without injuring yourself.

8. When the council was on the point of being dismissed, news was brought that Hannibal had taken<sup>6</sup> and burnt the bridge.

9. Although you may say that you were late in returning home that night, every one believes that you are making a mistake.

10. When the ship was two miles distant from the harbour, it suddenly took in a great deal of water, and all very nearly perished.

11. You surely remember, and the more so because you were very intimate with my father, how much he delighted at the age of eighty in cultivating his garden.

12. If any one thinks that the city will be relieved on the 1st of January, he makes a great mistake, because the enemy's forces are daily increasing.

---

<sup>1</sup> = not to approach nearer.      <sup>2</sup> (345, s).      <sup>3</sup> (345, q).

<sup>4</sup> (277).      <sup>5</sup> (345, r).      <sup>6</sup> Participle (51).

## CHAPTER XLVII.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

**346.** When the words of a speaker are narrated exactly as they fell from his lips, the speech is said to be given in *oratio recta* (direct speech). When the exact words are not used and the whole is prefaced by such an introduction as *he said that*, then the speech is said to be reported in **oratio obliqua** (indirect speech).

For instance some one in the House of Commons might say, "I congratulate the honourable member, who has just sat down, on his observations". If the speaker was afterwards describing his own speech to some one else, he would say, "I remarked that I congratulated the honourable member, who had just sat down, on his observations". This is one form of indirect speech; the speaker reports himself. But a journalist who was making a report for a newspaper would probably write, "Mr. Brown said that he congratulated the honourable member, who had just sat down, on his observations". It will be noticed that there is an alteration both in the pronoun and the tense. It is with the last form of indirect speech that we have now to deal.

**347.** In this the first and second persons never appear; the third person alone is found. The **only moods** used in the Latin are the **infinitive** and the **subjunctive**.

**348.** What in *oratio recta* is a **principal sentence** becomes in *oratio obliqua* an **accusative** and **infinitive**.

**349.** The pronouns **ego** and **nos** will become **se**, or if the nominative case is required **ipse**. **Meus** and **noster** will be altered to **suus**. **Tu** and **vos** will become **ille** and **illi**, etc. (or **is** and **ei**): **tuus** and **vester** will become **illius** and **illorum**.

**350.** Let us take a speech of Caesar's.

*Oratio recta.*

- (a) In my consulship Ariovistus eagerly courted the friendship of the Roman people. Ariovistus me consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetivit.

*Oratio obliqua.*

- (Caesar said that) in his consulship Ariovistus had eagerly courted the friendship of the Roman people.  
(Caesar dixit) **Ariovistum** se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam **appetivisse**.

This is a principal sentence, and therefore in oratio obliqua becomes accusative and infinitive. **Me** is altered to **se** (abl. case).

- (b) My integrity has been proved in the whole course of my life, and my good fortune in the war with the Helvetii ;

Mea innocentia perpetua vita, felicitas Helvetiorum bello est perspecta ;

- His integrity had been proved in the whole course of his life, and his good fortune in the war with the Helvetii ;

**Suam innocentiam** perpetua vita, **felicitatem** Helvetiorum bello **esse** perspectam ;

- (c) And no blame rests on you. Neque ulla penes vos culpa est.

- And no blame rested on them. Neque ullam penes illos **culpam esse**.

**351.** In oratio recta the personal pronoun as subject is not inserted unless it is emphatic. The subject of the infinitive in oratio obliqua, whether **se** or **illum** or any other pronoun, must be expressed.

**352.** **Hic** and **iste** in oratio recta become **ille** and **is** in oratio obliqua. When the verb of *saying* at the head of the speech is in past time **nunc**, *now*, must be changed to **tunc**, *then* ; **hic**, *here*, to **ibi**, *there* ; **huc**, *hither*, to **illuc**, *thither* ; **hodie**, *to-day*, to **illo die**, *on that day*, etc.

**353.** All clauses that are **subordinate** to an accusative and infinitive are in the **subjunctive**, whether introduced by a **sub-**

**ordinating** conjunction or a relative pronoun. A speech in oratio obliqua is generally introduced by a verb of *saying* in the past tense, and so this subjunctive is generally in the imperfect or pluperfect tense. A **future perfect** in oratio recta becomes **pluperfect** subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

*Oratio recta.*

(a) Those who stand by are witnesses.

Ei qui adstant testes sunt.

(b) You do not come, because you prefer to expose the lives of others rather than of yourselves to so great a peril.

Non venitis, quia aliorum quam vestra corpora tanto periculo mavultis obicere.

*Oratio obliqua.*

(He said that) those who stood by were witnesses.

(Dixit) eos qui **adstarent** testes esse.

They did not come, because they preferred to expose the lives of others rather than of themselves to so great a peril.

Illos non venire, quia aliorum quam sua corpora tanto periculo **mallent** obicere.

**354.** A **co-ordinating** conjunction connects sentences of equal rank, principal with principal, or subordinate with subordinate. In the former case the conjunction will be followed by an **accusative** and **infinitive** in oratio obliqua.

The Aedui have suffered a great defeat, but worse has befallen the Sequani than the Aedui.

Aedui magnam calamitatem acceperunt, sed peius Sēquānis quam Aeduis accidit.

(He said that) the Aedui had suffered a great defeat, but worse had befallen the Sequani than the Aedui.

Aeduos magnam calamitatem accepisse, **sed** peius Sequanis quam Aeduis **accidisse**.

The co-ordinating conjunction **sed** joins two principal sentences in oratio recta, and two accusative and infinitive phrases in oratio obliqua.

**355.** The principal **co-ordinating** conjunctions are **et, atque, neque, aut, sed, tamen, nam, enim, itaque**.

356. The principal **subordinating** conjunctions are **ut, quod, quia, cum, dum, antequam, priusquam, si, nisi, quamquam.**

## EXERCISE 47.

## A.

Turn into oratio obliqua, as if **dixit** had preceded :—

1. Qui<sup>1</sup> prior strinxerit ferrum, eius victoria erit. Intenti ergo omnes armatique signum expectabitis.

2. Ita senectus honesta est si se ipsa defendit.

3. Nos iustissimi homines sumus qui Transalpinas gentes oleam et vitem serere non sinimus, quo pluris sint nostra oliveta nostraeque vineae.

4. Tu ad neglegendas leges et quaestiones valuisti.

5. Omnes boni quantum in ipsis fuit Caesarem occiderunt.

6. Ingens in urbe trepidatio fuit; conclamatum ad arma concursumque in muros atque portas est.

## B.

Turn into oratio recta with **inquit** (*cf.* 3):—

1. Dixit Marcellum cum tertia fere parte exercitus ad recipiendas urbes profectum esse quae ad Carthaginienses defecissent.

2. Respondit omnia eam fortunam habitura quamcunque temeritas collegae habuisset; sibi communicatum cum alio, non ademptum, imperium esse.

3. Dicit se scire illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere.

4. Dixit se optare ut omnia prospere evenirent, sed si quid adversi caderet hostium, se telis potius quam suffragiis iratorum civium caput obiecturum.

---

<sup>1</sup> The words will be found in the Latin-English vocabulary.



5. Dicit se tanti Divitiacum aestimare, ut et rei publicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet.

6. Statuendum ait omnium primum esse quemadmodum imperio utantur.

7. Dixit sese illuc antea venturum fuisse, nisi intellexisset regem iam abiisse.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

### ORATIO OBLIQUA—*Continued.*

**357.** A **command** which in oratio recta would be expressed by an imperative requires a **subjunctive** (generally in the imperfect tense) in oratio obliqua, as the command will have become indirect.

#### *Oratio recta.*

Restore the hostages which you have from the Aedui.

Obsides quos habes ab Aeduis redde.

#### *Oratio obliqua.*

(That) he should restore the hostages which he had from the Aedui.

Obsides quos haberet ab Aeduis redderet.

**358.** Similarly, a **prohibition** will be expressed by **ne** with the **subjunctive**.

Do not provoke the Aedui by any aggression, or make war on them and their allies.

Ne Aeduos iniuria lacessiveris, neve eis sociisque eorum bellum intuleris.

(That) he should not provoke the Aedui by any aggression, or make war on them and their allies.

Ne Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve eis sociisque eorum bellum inferret.

**359.** **Questions** asked in the **second** person in oratio recta are rendered by the **subjunctive** in the **third** person in oratio obliqua.

What do you want? Why do you come into my territories?	What did they want? Why did they come into his territories?
Quid vultis? Cur in meas possessiones venitis?	Quid <b>vellent</b> ? Cur in suas possessiones <b>venirent</b> ?

**360.** But questions in the **first** or **third** person, if rhetorical, are rendered by the **accusative** and **infinitive** in oratio obliqua. A rhetorical question is not asked with the idea of obtaining an answer, and is, in fact, a statement in disguise.

(a) Why are we waiting here?	Why were they waiting there?
Cur hic moramur?	Cur ibi <b>se mōrari</b> ?

The question is rhetorical, and no answer is expected. It is really a reproach rather than a question.

(b) For what could the boy have done of his own will?	For what could the boy have done of his own will?
Quid enim sua sponte puer facere potuit?	Quid enim sua sponte <b>puerum</b> facere <b>potuisse</b> ?

**361.** The deliberative subjunctive (125) in oratio recta remains in the subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

What am I to do? Whither am I to turn?	What was he to do? Whither was he to turn?
Quid faciam? Quo me vertam?	Quid <b>faceret</b> ? Quo se <b>ver-</b> <b>teret</b> ?

*Learn and translate :—*

Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit : Ius esse belli, ut qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent : item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tentassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret.

## EXERCISE 48.

## A.

Turn into oratio obliqua :—

1. Quid est levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?
2. Respicite hominum fortunas, respicite dubios variosque casus.
3. Quid tandem veremini aut cur de virtute ducis desperatis?
4. Ex omnibus praemiis virtutis, si ratio praemiorum habenda est, amplissimum est praemium gloria.

## B.

Turn the following sentences, which are in direct speech, into the indirect form (oratio obliqua), as if a verb in a historic tense had preceded, and so render them into Latin :—

1. We have been sent by Pompeius to Caesar as though to an ally and friend.
2. What influence will the consul have in-opposition-to a rebellious and hasty colleague? He will be obliged to resist two leaders, Valerius and Hannibal.
3. What am I to reply? Everybody will acknowledge that you have made many attempts [but] have accomplished little.
4. The soldiers, recruits with no experience of warfare and unaccustomed to forced marches, are unable to make use of their victory.
5. It is clear enough that war will soon break out; I will return therefore to the place<sup>1</sup> from which I came; do you take care that the enemy do not attack the city unawares.
6. You ought, as far as you can, so to train your minds that you can meet the terrors of death itself with composure.

---

<sup>1</sup> = thither whence.

7. Can we trust such allies? The danger is that, if we allow them to enter the province, they will not depart until they have reduced all to slavery.

8. Why do you hesitate? You must now choose between peace and war. Do not abandon those who have so often been of service in times of distress,<sup>1</sup> and are now ready-to-undergo any<sup>2</sup> fate with you.

## CHAPTER XLIX.

## MONEY AND INTEREST.

**362.** The ordinary unit employed in reckoning sums of money was the **sestertius** or **nummus**, which in the late period of the Roman republic was worth about two pence. So

**sex sestertii** (6 sesterces) = *one shilling*.

**centum viginti sestertii** (120 sesterces) = *one pound*.

**363.** As the phrase **millia sestertium**, *thousands of sesterces*, occurred so often, the word **sestertium**<sup>3</sup> began to be considered and declined as a neuter substantive meaning 1,000 *sesterces*. This was never a coin, but always a sum of money. In paying large sums the coin employed was the **dēnārius** (worth about 8½d.). Sums from 2,000 up to 1,000,000 sesterces were reckoned by this **sestertium** with a numeral **adjective**.

(a) 2,000 sesterces is **duo sestertia**.

(b) 10,000 sesterces is **decem sestertia**.

**364.** Then as the sum of 100,000 sesterces became common, it was agreed that **sestertium** with a numeral **adverb** attached

<sup>1</sup> = in distress.      <sup>2</sup> Use *omnis*.

<sup>3</sup> This is the gen. pl. The old gen. pl. in **-um** of nouns in the second declension was generally superseded by that in **-orum**, but was retained for names of weights and measures. So the gen. pl. of **denarius** is **denarium**, and of **talentum** the gen. pl. is **talentum**.

should denote so many 100,000 sesterces. This system of reckoning was adopted for sums of a million and upwards.

(a) 1,000,000 sesterces = decies **sestertium**.

(Ten times 100,000).

(b) 1,300,000 sesterces = terdecies **sestertium**.

(c) 2,000,000 sesterces = vicies **sestertium**.

**365.** The earliest denomination of Roman money and the original unit was the **as** (*gen. assis*), which was copper and supposed to weigh a pound, or twelve ounces (**unciae**). It was divided thus:—

<b>Uncia</b> ( <i>gen. unciae</i> )	= 1 oz., or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.
<b>Sextans</b> ( <i>gen. sextantis</i> )	= 2 oz., „ $\frac{1}{6}$ „ „
<b>Quadrans</b>	= 3 oz., „ $\frac{1}{4}$ „ „
<b>Triens</b>	= 4 oz., „ $\frac{1}{3}$ „ „
<b>Quincunx</b> ( <i>gen. quincuncis</i> )	= 5 oz., „ $\frac{5}{12}$ „ „
<b>Sēmissis</b> ( <i>gen. semissis</i> )	= 6 oz., „ $\frac{1}{2}$ „ „
<b>Septunx</b>	= 7 oz., „ $\frac{7}{12}$ „ „
<b>Bes</b> ( <i>gen. bessis</i> )	= 8 oz., „ $\frac{2}{3}$ „ „
<b>Dodrans</b>	= 9 oz., „ $\frac{3}{4}$ „ „
<b>Dextans</b>	= 10 oz., „ $\frac{5}{6}$ „ „
<b>Deunx</b>	= 11 oz., „ $\frac{11}{12}$ „ „

**366.** The legal rate of interest was  $\frac{1}{100}$  of the capital per month, or 12 per cent. per annum. This was called **ūsurae centēsimae**. Lower rates than this were denoted by the fractions of the **as**, which was used as unit in most weights and measures.

(a)  $\frac{1}{12}$  per cent per month

or

1 per cent. per annum.

(b)  $\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. per month

or

4 per cent. per annum.

Usurae **unciae**.

Usurae **trientes**.

**367.** The same fractions were employed in questions of inheritance.

- (a) Heir to the whole estate.      Hēres **ex asse**.  
 (b) Heir to one-fourth of the      Heres **ex quadrante**.  
      estate.  
 (c) Heir to three-fourths of the      Heres **ex dodrante**.  
      estate.

*Latin Proverbs.*

Quod non opus est, asse carum est.

What you do not want is dear at an as.

Āsinus ēsūriens fustem negligit.

A hungry donkey does not mind the stick.

**EXERCISE 49.**

1. He borrowed four million sesterces at three per cent.
2. At least call a meeting of the people, that I may know whether this is the declaration of a few or of the entire state.
3. Gaius expected to be heir to the whole property, but by the will he was heir to three-fourths<sup>1</sup> only.
4. In reply to my repeated enquiries<sup>2</sup> he said nothing; the<sup>3</sup> longer I reflect, the more mysterious does the affair seem.
5. I asked whether he had not sold the horse for £50, but he replied that he had given it to his brother.
6. It is not always the traveller that is slain by the highwayman; sometimes the highwayman is slain by the traveller.
7. Pompeius valued my brother so highly that he promised to give his children 200,000 sesterces apiece.
8. The senate have resolved that the conspirators should be condemned to exile<sup>4</sup>; the sins which they have committed are too<sup>5</sup> great to be pardoned.

---

<sup>1</sup> (367).      <sup>2</sup> = he replied nothing to me asking repeatedly.

<sup>3</sup> (192).      <sup>4</sup> (155).      <sup>5</sup> (71).



9. You say that your uncle bequeathed ten million sesterces to his daughter, but as she has died you yourself have become sole heir.

10. It would <sup>1</sup> have been endless to recount all the exploits of Caesar; for who would be able to find words to do justice to his merits?

11. The ambassador replied that it was not only the approach of evil, but the mere apprehension of it that caused disaster, for as soon as it was reported that the enemy's forces were near, those who possessed estates in-the-country took refuge in the towns.

12. "You are no longer content with liberty," said he, "unless at the same time you can domineer over others, who think it fair that they too should be free."

## CHAPTER L.

### ORATIO OBLIQUA—*Continued.*

**368.** When the relative pronoun is used as a substitute for a co-ordinating conjunction, *i.e.*, when it is equivalent to **et is** or **nam is** (*cf.* 106), the clause which follows, not being subordinate, will have its verb in the **infinitive** mood.

He said that firm friends ought to	Dixit constantes amicos eli-
be chosen, <b>but that</b> of this kind	gendos esse, <b>cuius</b> generis
( <i>of which kind</i> ) there <b>was</b> great	magnam <b>esse</b> pēnūriam.
scarcity.	

**369.** A relative clause is sometimes found in the **indicative** in a reported speech. It is not then really a part of the speech that is being reported; it is a **comment** or **explanation** inserted by the writer or reporter.

---

<sup>1</sup> (390).

He was informed by scouts that all had left that part of the village, **which he had handed over** to the Gauls, and that the **overhanging** mountains were occupied by large numbers.

Per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, **quam Gallis concesserat**, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque **qui impenderent** a maxima multitudine teneri.

There are here two relative sentences of which the antecedents are part of an accusative and infinitive phrase. **Concesserat** is in the indicative because the clause in which it occurs was not part of the statement made by the scouts; it is an explanation inserted by the writer for the enlightenment of the reader. **Impenderent** on the other hand is subjunctive because the scouts explained which mountains they meant. What they really said was *all have left that part of the village in the night, and the mountains which overhang are occupied by large numbers.*

**370.** After a verb in a historic tense introducing a reported speech the **present** and **perfect** subjunctive are often found. These tenses are used to give greater vividness to the narrative. For the same reason **hic** and **iste** are sometimes employed in oratio obliqua.

Caesar replied that there could be no friendship between himself and them if they remained in Gaul; nor was there any unoccupied land in Gaul which could be given to numbers so great as theirs.

Caesar **respondit** sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse si in Gallia remanerent; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae multitudini **possint**.

**Possint** is used vividly instead of the strictly grammatical **possent**. It will be noted too that **hic** has not been altered to **ille**.

### EXERCISE 50.

1. When the ambassadors had delivered their message, the king angrily replied as follows: <sup>1</sup> (*Oratio obliqua*) "I can have

---

<sup>1</sup> = these things.

no friendship with those who have broken their word and betrayed their allies. My opinion to-day is the same as it was before. Since you have violated the law of nations you must pay the penalty. If you wish to enjoy the blessings of peace, give back to the Indians the lands which you have unjustly seized. What reason is there why I should abandon those who have always deserved well of the state?"

2. To those who asked him why he had resigned his command so easily he answered that he was weary of the world;<sup>1</sup> it had now come to this, that the name of Rome<sup>2</sup> was an object of derision to those whose ancestors had chosen to be subject to the Roman people in preference to ruling over others; the state was utterly ruined; and what but death remained for him?

3. On his arrival<sup>3</sup> at the camp the general called<sup>4</sup> the soldiers together, and while<sup>5</sup> the officers stood round addressed them from<sup>6</sup> a high platform to the following effect: (*Oratio obliqua*) "I have decided to release from service all those who on account of age or wounds have become unfit for war; and-they<sup>7</sup> may return home at once. It will be my care to provide for the veterans in such a way that they themselves may pass a happy and honoured life, and that others may be willing to undergo the same hardships and dangers for the sake of gaining the same reward. Consider therefore whether you will cheerfully accept what I cheerfully offer."

---

<sup>1</sup> = of all things.

<sup>2</sup> Use adj.

<sup>3</sup> = when he had arrived.

<sup>4</sup> Use participle.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. abs.

<sup>6</sup> Pro.

<sup>7</sup> Use relative pron. (368).

## APPENDIX I.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A. Governing the **accusative**.

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Before. at. to. against or towards.

Circum, circa, citră, cis,  
Around. around. on this side of. on this side of.

Contră, inter, ergă, extră,  
Against. between. towards. outside of.

Infră, intră, iuxtă, ob,  
Below. within. near. on account of.

Pănăs, pănăs, post, praeter,  
In the hands of. behind. behind. besides.

Prăpă, propter, pěr, sēcundum,  
Near. on account of. through. along, in accordance with.

Supră, versus, ultră, trans,  
Above. towards. beyond. across.

B. Governing the **ablative**.

A, ab, absque, cōram, de,  
By. without. in the presence of. down from.

Pălam, clam, cum, ex, e,  
In the presence of. unknown to. with. out of.

Sine, tēnus, pro, prae,  
Without. as far as. before. in front of.

C. Governing **accusative** when **motion**, **ablative** when **rest**,  
is implied.

Sūper, subter, sub, in,  
Over. beneath. under. in.

Examples of harder uses.

**A. Apud.** Apud Laecam, *in the house of Laeca*; apud iudicem, *before the judge*; apud Vergilium, *in the pages of Vergil*; apud antiquos, *among the men of old*.

**Contra.** Contra Galliam, *opposite to Gaul*; contra opinionem, *contrary to expectation*.

**Erga** (is used only of feelings). Benevolentia tua erga nos, *your kindness towards us*.

**Extra.** Extra castra, *outside the camp*; extra noxam, *free from fault*.

**Iuxta.** Iuxta urbem, *close to the city*.

**Ob.** Ob oculos, *before the eyes*; ob eam rem, *on account of this*.

**Per.** Per urbem, *through the city*; per triennium, *during three years*; per exploratores, *by means of scouts*; per leges licet, *the laws permit it (it is allowed as far as concerns the laws)*.

**Post.** Post aciem, *behind the line*; post hominum memoriam, *within the memory of man*.

**Praeter.** Praeter castra, *beyond the camp*; praeter consuetudinem, *contrary to custom*.

**Secundum.** Secundum flumen, *along the river*; secundum proelium, *after the battle*; secundum naturam, *in accordance with nature*.

**Versus** is placed after the noun it governs, which must be the name of a town. Massiliam versus, *towards Marseilles*.

**B. A, ab.** Ab Italia, *from Italy*; a me, *from my house*; captus a Romanis, *captured by the Romans*; a fronte, *in front*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a te sto, *I take your side*; a pueris, *from boyhood*.

**De.** De muro, *down from the wall*; diem de die, *day after day*; de integro, *afresh*; de provincia, *concerning the province*.

**Cum.** Cum Caesāre, *along with Caesar* ; cum gladio venit, *he came wearing a sword* ; magno cum periculo, *attended by great danger*.

**Ex.** Ex aedibus, *out of the house* ; ex legibus, *in accordance with the law* ; ex equo pugnare, *to fight on horseback*.

**Tenus** follows its noun and occasionally governs the genitive ; fluvio tenus, *as far as the river* ; Corcȳrae tenus, *as far as Corcyra*.

**Pro.** Pro castris, *before the camp* ; pro suggestu, *on the front of the platform* ; pro legibus, *on behalf of the law* ; pro numero pignantium, *in proportion to the number of the combatants* ; pro sapientia tua, *with your usual wisdom*.

**Prae.** Prae se pūgionem fert, *he bears the dagger before him* ; prae nobis, *in comparison with us* ; prae lacrimis non loqui possum, *I cannot speak for tears* (with a negative or implied negative only).

**C. In.** In Galliam festinavit, *he hastened to Gaul* ; in dies, *daily* ; in hunc modum, *in this way*.

In Italia commorabor, *I was staying in Italy* ; in his, *among these* ; in rebus adversis, *in adversity* ; in pueris, *in the case of boys* ; in tali tempore, *in such an emergency*.

**Sub.** Exercitum sub iugum misit, *he sent the army under the yoke* ; sub noctem, *at nightfall* ; sub pellibus hiemant, *they pass the winter under canvas* (under skins).

**Super.** Super lātēres, *on the top of the bricks* ; alius super alium, *one after another* ; super hac re, *concerning this matter*.



## APPENDIX II.

## ORDER OF WORDS AND CLAUSES IN LATIN PROSE.

1. The normal order of words in a simple Latin sentence is :—  
 (i.) Subject, (ii.) Indirect Object, (iii.) Direct Object, (iv.) Verb.

*Divitiacus Sequanis obsides dedit.*

Divitiacus gave hostages to the Sequani.

This arrangement may be varied for special reasons—(i.) to give emphasis to particular words, (ii.) for the sake of euphony and rhythm, (iii.) to avoid such order as results in verse.

*Quam me delectat Theramenes !*

How charmed I am with *Theramenes* !

The name *Theramenes* is emphasised by putting it last. In English we have to employ the passive voice to gain the same effect.

*Praecurrat amicitia iudicium.*

Friendship outstrips judgment.

2. Adjectives and attributive genitives usually follow their noun, except demonstratives and adjectives of number and quantity, which precede.

*Amici novi*, new friends ; *hoc praemium*, this reward ; *multa verba*, many words ; *magnae utilitates*, great advantages ; *tribuni militum*, the tribunes of the soldiers.

The attributive genitive precedes the noun in certain phrases, or when it is emphatic.

*Senatus consultum*, a decree of the senate ; *corporis dolor*, bodily pain (as distinct from mental).

When a noun is qualified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the order is usually adjective, genitive, noun.

*In hoc exiguo vitae curriculo.*

In this short span of life.

Words and phrases in apposition as a rule follow the noun.

Dionysius *tyrannus* pueros docebat.

Dionysius the tyrant used to teach boys.

3. The partitive genitive follows the word on which it depends.

Aliquid *novi*, something new ; duo millia *passuum*, two miles.

4. Adverbs and adverbial phrases stand immediately before the word they modify, except when special emphasis is needed.

Pueros *vehementer* culpat.

He severely blames the boys.

De Scipione dicam *libentius*.

Of Scipio I will speak with more readiness.

5. Contrasted words are placed next to one another.

Ego Fabium *senem adulescens* dilexi.

In my youth I loved the aged Fabius.

*Paratus in imparatos* Clodius inciderat.

Clodius, when prepared, had fallen in with those who were not prepared.

6. Words that are connected in sense are frequently separated by some less important word.

*Tantus* eos *honor* prosequitur amicorum.

Such respect on the part of their friends attends them.

Tum *est* Cato *locutus*.

Then Cato spoke.

7. In lists of persons and things conjunctions must be all left out or all inserted.

Villa abundat *lacte caseo melle*.

The farmhouse is stocked with milk, cheese and honey.

Or

Villa abundat *et lacte et caseo et melle*.

A connection is often established by the repetition of some word.

*Sibi habeant igitur arma, sibi equos, sibi hastas.*

Let them keep their arms, horses and spears.

8. In compound sentences the figure Chiasmus often appears. When there are two pairs of contrasting words, the order of one pair is the inverse of the order of the other. Thus if X contrasts with  $X^1$  and Y with  $Y^1$  the order is  $XY Y^1 X^1$  or  $Y X X^1 Y^1$ . The coordinating conjunction may be omitted.

Eum **accusat** Hortensius, Cicero **defendit**.

Hortensius accuses, Cicero defends him.

Illorum **beata mors** videtur, harum **vita** laudabilis.

The death of the former seems to be happy, the life of the latter praiseworthy.

9. A subordinate noun clause comes before the verb which governs it, just as the object precedes the verb. The reverse order is found when the subordinate clause is very long, or more emphatic than the principal sentence.

*Se rediturum esse pollicetur.*

He promises to return.

*Quid acciderit videmus.*

We see what has happened.

*Vide quid intersit inter te et fratrem tuum.*

See what a difference there is between you and your brother.

10. A subordinate relative clause when adjectival is placed as near to its antecedent as the structure of the sentence will allow. Where there is a strong contrast, the relative clause precedes the principal sentence.

Ego Maximum, eum qui Tarentum recepit, semper dilexi.

I have always loved Maximus, the man who recovered Tarentum.

*Quod adulescentes contemnunt, id docti senes extimescent?*

Shall experienced old men dread that which youths despise?

11. Subordinate adverbial clauses, with the exception of those which are consecutive, generally precede the principal sentence.

*Simul ac veneris*, opus incipiam, (temporal).

I will begin the task as soon as you come.

Senectus enim, *quamvis non sit gravis*, tamen aufert viriditatem, (concessive).

For though old age may not be burdensome, still it takes away one's freshness.

*Quia natura mutari non potest*, verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt, (causal).

Because nature cannot be changed, true friendships are everlasting.

*Si curam fugimus*, virtus fugienda est, (conditional).

If we flee from anxiety, we must flee from virtue.

Quis tam animo duro fuit *ut non Roscii morte commoveretur?* (consecutive).

Who was so hard-hearted as not to be moved by the death of Roscius?



## VOCABULARIES.

(References, unless otherwise stated, are to paragraphs.)

### I.—LATIN - ENGLISH.

**a, ab** (gov. abl.), *by; from.*  
**āb-eo, -īre, -iī, -ītum**, *I go away.*  
**ab-icio, -icēre, -iēci, -iectum**, *I throw away.*  
**abiectus** (from) **abicio**.  
**absum, abfui** (and) **afui, abesse**, *I am distant from: (and see) (93, c).*  
**ac, and.**  
**ac-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum**, *I receive.*  
**accūs-o, -are**, *I accuse.*  
**āci-es, -ei** (f.), *line of battle.*  
**ad** (gov. acc.), *at; to; towards.*  
**ād-īmo, -imēre, -ēmi, -emptum**, *I take away.*  
**admōdum**, *very; quite.*  
**ad-sentio** (or) **assentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum** (gov. dat.), *I approve.*  
**advent-us, -ūs** (m.), *arrival.*  
**adversus** (adj.), *bad; adverse.*  
**Aedu-i, -ōrum** (m. pl.), *a Gallic tribe.*  
**aequāl-is, -is** (as noun), *contemporary.*  
**aestīm-o, -āre**, *I value.*  
**Aetōl-i, -ōrum**, *the Aetolians.*  
**Africānus**, *the cognomen of Scipio.*  
**ā-ger, -gri** (m.), *field; territory.*  
**āg-o, -ēre, ēgi, actum**, *I do.*  
**ao** (verb defect.), *I say.*  
**āliēnus** (adj.), *belonging to another.*  
**āliquot** (adj. indecl.), *some; several.*

**ālius, other; alii . . . alii**, *some . . . others.*  
**alter, the other** (of two); **alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.**  
**amplus** (adj.), *great; honourable.*  
**an-ceps, -cēpitis**, *doubtful; keenly-contested.*  
**ānimadver-to, -tēre, -ti, -sum**, *I notice.*  
**ānim-us, -i** (m.), *mind; courage.*  
**ann-us, -i** (m.), *year.*  
**antea**, *formerly.*  
**appell-o, -āre**, *I call.*  
**Appi-us, -i**, *a Roman name.*  
**āpud** (gov. acc.), *with; before (a judge).*  
**arbitri-um, -i** (n.), *decision; will.*  
**arctē**, *closely.*  
**arc-us, -ūs** (m.), *a bow.*  
**arm-ā, -ōrum** (n. pl.), *arms.*  
**armātus** (partic.), *armed.*  
**Athēniens-is, -is**, *Athenian.*  
**atque, and.**  
**at-tingo, -tingēre, -tīgi, -tactum**, *I touch.*  
**auct-or, -ōris**, *author; voucher.*  
**auctōrit-as, -ātis**, *influence.*  
**aud-eo, -ēre, ausus**, *I dare.*  
**aud-io, -īre, īdi**, *I hear; listen.*  
**Auli-us, -i**, *a Roman name.*  
**aut, or; aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*  
**autem, however; but.**  
**auxili-um, -i** (n.), *help.*



bell-um, -i (n.), *war*.  
 bēnēfici-um, -i (n.), *a kindness*.  
 bōnus, *good*; boni, *the well-affected*;  
*the patriotic*.  
 brēvis (adj.), *short*.  
 brevissime, *very shortly*.

C. = Caius, *a Roman name*.  
 cād-o, -ēre, cēcīdi, cāsum, *I fall*;  
*be fall*.  
 caecus, *blind*.  
 Caesar, *a famous Roman*.  
 cālāmītōsus, *disastrous*.  
 cāp-io, -ēre, cēpi, captum, *I take*;  
*form*.  
 cāp-ut, -itis (n.), *head*; *life*; *person*.  
 Carthāgīniens-is, -is, *Carthaginian*.  
 cārus, *dear*.  
 castr-ā, -ōrum (n. pl.), *camp*.  
 cās-us, -ūs (m.), *accident*; *event*;  
*misfortune*.  
 cātell-us, -i (m.), *puppy*.  
 Cāt-o, -ōnis, *a Roman name*.  
 centum, *a hundred*.  
 cess-o, -āre, *I am idle*.  
 circā (gov. acc.), *around*.  
 cīv-is, -is (c.), *a citizen*.  
 clām-or, -ōris (m.), *a shout*.  
 clientēla (f.), *body of dependants*.  
 coactus, *from cogo*.  
 cōgītāti-o, -ōnis (f.), *reflection*.  
 cōgīt-o, -āre, *I reflect*.  
 cōg-o, -ere, cōēgi, coactum, *I*  
*compel*.  
 collēg-a, -ae (m.), *a colleague*.  
 coll-is, -is (m.), *hill*.  
 cōlōnia (f.), *a colony*.  
 cōlōn-us, -i (m.), *colonist*; *settler*.  
 commūnīc-o, -āre, *I share*.  
 compār-o, -āre, *I compare*.  
 complex-or, -i, complexus, *I em-*  
*brace*.  
 com-pleo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *I*  
*fill*; *fulfil*.  
 conclām-o, -āre, *I cry out*.  
 con-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursum,  
*I run*; *rush*.  
 condōn-o, -āre, *I forgive*.  
 con-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, *I*  
*attribute*.

conflū-ens, -entis (m.), *confluence*.  
 congrēd-ior, -i, congressus, *I fight*.  
 con-icio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum, *I*  
*hurl*.  
 consili-um, -i (n.), *plan*.  
 con-suesco, -suescēre, -suēvi, -suē-  
 tum, *I am accustomed*.  
 cons-ul, -ūlis (m.), *consul*.  
 consūlāt-us, -ūs (m.), *consulship*.  
 corp-us, -ōris (n.), *body*.  
 crē-do, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum, *I believe*;  
*trust*.  
 Crēs, Crētis (m.), *a Cretan*.  
 crimin-or, -āri, *I accuse*.  
 Crispin-us, -i (m.), *a Roman name*.  
 culpa (f.), *fault*.  
 cum (conj.), *when*; *since*; *although*.  
 cum (prep.), *with* (gov. abl.).  
 cūr, *why*.  
 cūra (f.), *care*; *anxiety*.  
 dē (gov. abl.), *from*; *down from*.  
 declār-o, -āre, *I declare*; *assert*.  
 dē-curro, -currēre, -curri (and)  
 -cucurri, -cursum, *I run down*.  
 dē-fendo, -fendēre, -fendi, -fensum,  
*I protect*.  
 dēfens-or, -ōris, *defender*.  
 dē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, *I be-*  
*stow*.  
 dēfessus, *weary*.  
 dē-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *I*  
*revolt*.  
 de-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-  
 sum, *I go down*.  
 despēr-o, -āre, *I despair*.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fui, *I am wanting*  
*to*; *miss*.  
 dē-trāho, -trāhere, -traxi, -tractum,  
*I draw from*.  
 dē-us, -i (m.), *God*.  
 dō, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *I give*.  
 doctus, *learned*.  
 dōl-or, -ōris (m.), *pain*; *grief*.  
 dōm-us, -ūs (f.), *home*; *house*.  
 dūbie, *doubtfully*; haud dubie, *with-*  
*out doubt*.  
 dūbius, *uncertain*.  
 dūc-o, -ere, duxi, ductum, *I con-*  
*sider*; *protract*.  
 dux, dūcis (m.), *a leader*.

- ea (from) is.  
 eam (from) is.  
 ef-ficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *I accomplish.*  
 ēgo, *I.*  
 ēgrēgius, *excellent; extraordinary.*  
 ei (from) is.  
 ē-icio, -icēre, -iēci, -iectum, *I drive out.*  
 eius (from) is.  
 ēnim, *for.*  
 eo (adv.), *thither.*  
 eo (from) is.  
 ēqu-ēs, -ītis (m.), *horse-soldier.*  
 ēqu-us, -i (m.), *horse.*  
 ergo, *therefore.*  
 et, *and.*  
 ētiam, *also; even.*  
 eum (from) is.  
 ēvĕn-io, -īre, -i, -tum, *I happen; turn out.*  
 ēver-to, -tere, -ti, -sum, *I overthrow.*  
 ex (gov. abl.), *out of.*  
 ex-cēdo, -cedēre, -cessi, -cessum, *I depart from.*  
 exercit-us, -ūs (m.), *army.*  
 expect-o, -āre, *I await.*  
 ex-sto, -stāre, -stīti, *I arise.*  
 extemplo, *immediately.*  
 fācĭn-us, -ōris (n.), *crime.*  
 fāc-io, -ēre, fēci, factum, *I do; make; esteem.*  
 fēlicĭt-as, -ātis (f.), *good fortune.*  
 fērē, *almost; about.*  
 fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *I produce; endure.*  
 ferr-um, -i (n.), *iron; sword.*  
 fid-es, -ei (f.), *faith; honour.*  
 filia (f.), *daughter.*  
 filiōla (f.), *little daughter.*  
 fili-us, -i (m.), *son.*  
 fio, fiēri, factus, *I become; am made; am done.*  
 flāgĭti-um, -i (n.), *crime; shameful deed.*  
 flūm-en, -īnis (n.), *river.*  
 fortis, *brave.*  
 fortĭter, *bravely.*  
 fortūna (f.), *fortune.*  
 frūg-es, -um (f. pl.), *fruits; produce.*  
 frūment-um, -i (n.), *corn.*  
 frustrā, *in vain.*  
 fūga (f.), *flight.*  
 gaes-um, -i (n.), *javelin.*  
 Gall-i, -ōrum (m. pl.), *the Gauls.*  
 gen-s, -tis (f.), *nation; race.*  
 German-i, -ōrum (m. pl.), *the Germans.*  
 gēr-o, -ēre, gessi, gestum, *I wage; carry on.*  
 glōria (f.), *glory.*  
 Gorgi-as, -ae (m.), *a celebrated rhetorician.*  
 hāb-eo, -ēre, *I have.*  
 Hannĭb-al, -ālis (m.), *a famous Carthaginian.*  
 haud, *not.*  
 hic, haec, hoc, *this.*  
 hōm-o, -īnis (m.), *man.*  
 hōnestus, *honourable.*  
 hostilis (adj.), *hostile; belonging to the enemy.*  
 host-is, -is (c.), *enemy.*  
 iāc-eo, -ēre, -ui, -tum, *I am inactive (literally, I lie prostrate).*  
 iam, *now; already.*  
 ibi, *there.*  
 idem, eādem, idem, *the same.*  
 il-le, -la, -lud, *that.*  
 illuc, *thither.*  
 immortālis (adj.), *immortal.*  
 impĕd-io, -ire, -ii, -itum, *I prevent.*  
 impĕri-um, -i (n.), *command; rule.*  
 impĕr-o, -āre, *I command; rule.*  
 impūden-s, -tis (adj.), *shameless.*  
 impūnit-us, -a, -uin, *unpunished.*  
 in (gov. abl.), *in; (gov. acc.), into; against.*  
 incōlūmis (adj.), *unhurt; safe.*  
 inde, *thence; from there.*  
 in-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *I begin.*  
 ingĕni-um, -i (n.), *natural ability.*  
 ingen-s, -tis (adj.), *great; huge.*  
 in-icio, -icēre, -iēci, -iectum, *I induce; inspire.*  
 iniūria (f.), *wrong; injustice.*  
 inquam (verb defect.), *I say.*

inquit (from) inquam.  
 insēquen-s, -tis (adj.), following;  
*next.*  
 insīpien-s, -tis (adj.), foolish.  
 institūt-um, -i (n.), custom; regula-  
*tion.*  
 intē-ger, -gra, -grum (adj.), un-  
*diminished.*  
 intel-lēgo, -legere, -lexi, -lectum, I  
*understand; perceive.*  
 intentus (partic.), strained; ready.  
 inter (gov. acc.), among; between.  
 inter-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, I  
*kill.*  
 inter-icio, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, I  
*put between.*  
 invēn-io, -ire, -i, -tum, I find.  
 ip-se, -sa, -sum, self; very.  
 ira (f.), anger.  
 irātus (adj.), angry.  
 is, ea, id, that; he, etc.  
 itā, so; thus.  
 itāque, and so; therefore.  
 itēm, likewise.  
 it-er, -inēris (n.), way; march.  
 itērum, again; a second time.  
 itum (from) eo, ire, ivi (or) ii, itum,  
*I go.*  
 Iūgurth-a, -ae (m.), an African  
*king.*  
 iūr-o, -are, I swear.  
 ius, iūris (n.), right; law.  
 iustitia (f.), uprightness; justice.  
 iustus (adj.), upright; just.

**L** = Lucius, a Roman praenomen.  
 lāb-or, -ōris (m.), toil; labour.  
 Lācēdaemōni-i, -ōrum (m. pl.), the  
*Lacedaemonians.*  
 laetitia (f.), joy.  
 languesc-o, -ēre, langui, I grow  
*feeble.*  
 lāp-is, -idis (m.), stone.  
 lassitūd-o, -inis (f.), weariness.  
 latrōcin-or, -āri, I rob on the high-  
*way.*  
 lēgāt-us, -i (m.), ambassador; lieu-  
*tenant.*  
 lēgi-o, -ōnis (f.), legion.  
 Leontinus (adj.), of Leontini (a town  
*in Sicily).*

lēvis (adj.), light; trifling.  
 lex, lēgis (f.), law.  
 liber, -ēra, -erum (adj.), free.  
 libēr-i, -ōrum (m. pl.), children.  
 littēr-ae, -ārum (f. pl.), a letter  
*(epistle); literature.*  
 lōc-us, -i (m.), place.  
 longē, far; by far.  
 lōqu-or, -i, lōcūtus, I speak.  
 lūd-o, -ere, lūsi, lūsum, I play; joke.

maer-or, -ōris (m.), mourning; grief.  
 māgis-ter, -tri (m.), master.  
 magnificus (adj.), splendid.  
 magnus (adj.), great.  
 māi-or, -us, greater.  
 mān-us, -ūs (f.), hand.  
 Marcell-us, -i (m.), a Roman name.  
 mār-e, -is (n.), sea.  
 Māri-us, -i (m.), a Roman general.  
 maximus, greatest.  
 mēdit-or, -āri, I think upon; plan.  
 mēmōria (f.), memory.  
 Mētell-us, -i (m.), a Roman name.  
 mēt-u-o, -ēre, -ui, I fear.  
 mēt-us, -ūs (m.), fear.  
 meus, my.  
 mi, voc. sing. masc. of meus.  
 militāris (adj.), military.  
 militia (f.), military service; militiae,  
*on service.*  
 mille, a thousand.  
 millia, thousands.  
 minus, less.  
 mitt-o, -ere, mīsi, missum, I send.  
 mixtus (partic.), mingled.  
 mōdō, only.  
 mor-s, -tis (f.), death.  
 mortuus (partic.), dead.  
 Mōsa (f.), the Meuse.  
 multum (adv.), much.  
 multus (adj.), many; much.  
 mūr-us, -i (m.), wall.  
 mūt-o, -āre, I change.

nē, lest; that . . . not.  
 nec = nēque.  
 neg-lēgo, -legere, -lexi, -lectum, I  
*disregard.*  
 nēgōti-um, -i (n.), business.  
 nēm-o, -inis, no one.

nēque, and not; neque . . . neque,  
neither . . . nor.

nesc-io, -īre, -īvi and -ii, I do not  
know.

nex, nēcis (f.), death.

nihil (n. indecl.), nothing.

nisi, if not; unless.

nōm-en, -īnis (n.), name.

nōn, not.

nōs, we; us.

nos-ter, -tra, -trum, our; nostri,  
our men.

nox, noctis (f.), night.

nūd-o, -āre, I strip.

nullus, nullius (adj.), no.

nūmēr-us, -i (m.), number.

nunc, now.

nunquam, never.

nunti-o, -āre, I announce; report.

ob-īcio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum, I throw  
in the way; expose.

obligātus (partic.), bound.

obsēcund-o, -āre, I comply with.

obtempēr-o, -āre, I obey.

ob-tingit, -tingēre, -tigit (mihi), it  
falls to (my) lot.

obviam, in the way; to meet.

occāsi-o, -ōnis (f.), opportunity.

oc-cido, -cidēre, -cidi, -cisum, I  
slay.

oc-curro, -currēre, -curri, -cursum,  
I run up.

ōlea (f.), olive; olive-tree.

ōlim, formerly; for some time.

ōlivēt-um, -i (n.), olive plantation.

ōm-en, -īnis (n.), omen.

omnis (adj.), all; every.

oport-et, -ēre, -uit, it behoves.

oppressus (partic.), overcome.

opt-o, -āre, I desire; pray for.

ōp-us, -ēris (n.), work.

oscūl-or, -āri, I kiss.

ōtiōsus (adj.), free from business; at  
leisure.

ōti-um, -i (n.), leisure.

par-s, -tis (f.), part.

parvus (adj.), small.

pāt-er, -ris (m.), father.

patrius (adj.), ancestral.

paucit-as, -ātis (f.), small numbers.

Paull-us, -i (m.), a Roman name.

pēdes-ter, -tris, -tre (adj.), of foot-  
soldiers.

per (gov. acc.), through; by means of.

pēr-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum, I perish.

per-fringo, -fringere, -frēgi, -frac-  
tum, I break through; infringe.

pēricūl-um, -i (n.), danger.

perpaucus (adj.), very few.

Persa, a dog's name.

Pers-es, -ae (m.), a Macedonian king.

per-vēnio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum,  
I arrive; reach.

pēs, pēdis (m.), foot.

pēt-o, -ēre, -īvi (or) -ii, -itum, I seek;  
ask; am a candidate for.

plēnus (adj.), full.

plūris (gen. of price), of more value.

plūs, plūris, more.

Pompei-us, -i, Pompey.

pōn-o, -ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, I place.

pōpūl-us, -i (m.), people.

porta (f.), gate; door.

possum, posse, pōtui, I am able.

post (gov. acc.), after.

pōtest-as, -ātis (f.), power.

pōt-i-or, -iri, -itū (gov. abl.), I gain  
possession of.

pōtius (adv.), rather.

praecipit-o, -āre, I hurl.

praecīlārus (adj.), famous; noble.

praedic-o, -āre, I declare.

praemi-um, -i (n.), reward.

praescri-bo, -bere, -psi, -ptum, I  
enjoin.

praescript-um, -i (n.), rule; dictation.

praetūra (f.), praetorship.

prae-vēnio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum,  
I arrive first.

prēm-o, -ēre, pressi, pressum, I  
press.

(prex), prēcīs (f.), prayer.

primō (adv.), at first.

primum (adv.), first; for the first  
time.

primus (adj.), first.

pri-or, -ōris (adj.), former; first of  
two.

prōcūl, at a distance; far.

proeli-um, i (n.), battle.

prōficisc-or, -i, profectus, *I start.*  
 prōhib-eo, -ēre, *I keep off.*  
 propter (gov. acc.), *on account of.*  
 prospēre, *fortunately.*  
 proximus (adj.), *nearest; next.*  
 publicē, *publicly.*  
 Publī-us, -i (m.), *a Roman name.*  
 puella (f.), *girl.*  
 pugna (f.), *battle.*  
 pugn-o, -āre, *I fight.*  
 pūt-o, -āre, *I think.*

Q. = Quintus, *a Roman praenomen.*  
 quadringent-i, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*  
 quae-ro, -rēre, -sivī, -sītum, *I seek;*  
*ask.*

quaesti-o, -ōnis (f.), *an inquiry.*  
 quam (conj.), *than; how.*  
 quamquam, *although.*  
 quamvis, *although.*  
 quantus (adj.), *how great.*  
 quattuor, *four.*  
 -que, *and.*  
 quemadmodum, *how.*  
 quī, quae, quod (pron.), *who; which.*  
 quī, quae, quod (adj.), *what; which.*  
 quia, *because.*  
 quicumque (adj.), *whatever.*  
 quid, *why.*  
 quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *a cer-*  
*tain one.*  
 quidem, *indeed.*  
 quin, *but that; that.*  
 quinque, *five.*  
 quo, *in order that (63).*  
 quod (conj.), *because.*  
 quodsi, *but if.*  
 quōniam, *since.*  
 quot (adj. indecl.), *how many.*

rāti-o, -ōnis (f.), *reasoning power.*  
 rātus (from) reor.  
 re-cipio, -cīpere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *I*  
*re-take; me recipio, I betake my-*  
*self.*  
 rēcūpēr-o, -āre, *I regain.*  
 rēd-eo, -īre, -iī, -ītum, *I return.*  
 rēd-īgo, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, *I bring*  
*back.*  
 rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum (pf. also  
 has rettuli), *I carry back.*

regn-o, -āre, *I am king; reign.*  
 rēg-o, -ēre, rexi, rectum, *I rule.*  
 rē-linguo, -linquēre, -liqui, -lictum,  
*I leave.*  
 rēliquus (adj.), *remaining; future;*  
*reliqui, the rest.*  
 reor, rēri, rātus, *I think.*  
 rēpentinus (adj.), *sudden.*  
 rēpugn-o, -āre, *I resist.*  
 rēs, rēi (f.), *thing; exploit.*  
 re-spicio, -spicēre, -spexi, -spectum,  
*I look back at; observe.*  
 respon-deo, -dēre, -di, -sum, *I*  
*answer.*  
 respons-um, -i (n.), *reply.*  
 res publica, rei publicae (f.), *the state.*  
 rex, rēgis (m.), *king.*  
 Rhēn-us, -i (m.), *the Rhine.*  
 rōbustus (adj.), *sturdy.*  
 Rōmānus (adj.), *Roman.*

Samnīt-es, -ium (m. pl.), *the Sam-*  
*nites.*  
 Samni-um, -i (n.), *Samnium, a*  
*country of Italy.*  
 sāpien-s, -tis (adj.), *wise.*  
 scio, scīre, scīvi, scītum, *I know.*  
 Scipi-o, -ōnis (m.), *a Roman name.*  
 scri-bo, -bere, -psi, -ptum, *I write.*  
 sē, *him; them (5).*  
 sēcum, = se + prep. cum (with).  
 sed, *but.*  
 sēd-es, -is (f.), *seat; habitation.*  
 sēnect-us, -ūtis (f.), *old age.*  
 sēn-ex, -is (m.), *old man; aged.*  
 sēpēl-io, -īre, -īvi (or) -iī, sepultum,  
*I bury.*  
 septem, *seven.*  
 septīm-us, *seventh.*  
 sequ-or, -i, sēcūtus, *I follow.*  
 sērio, *in earnest; seriously.*  
 sēr-o, -ēre, sēvi, sātum, *I sow.*  
 serv-us, -i (m.), *a slave.*  
 sēsē, *emphatic form of se.*  
 si, *if.*  
 sic, *so.*  
 sign-um, -i (n.), *standard; signal.*  
 silenti-um, -i (n.), *silence.*  
 sīnē (gov. abl.), *without.*  
 sīn-o, -ēre, sivi, sītum, *I allow.*  
 sōci-us, -i (m.), *ally.*



sōl-eo, -ēre, sōlītus, *I am accustomed.*

sōlītūd-o, -īnis (f.), *loneliness.*

sollicitūd-o, -īnis (f.), *anxiety.*

solum (adv.), *only.*

sōlus (adj.), *alone.*

Sōra (f.), *a town of Latium.*

spar-go, -gere, -si, -sum, *I scatter.*

spāti-um, -i (n.), *space of time.*

spēcūlāt-or, -ōris (m.), *spy.*

spēs, spēi (f.), *hope.*

spicūl-um, -i (n.), *javelin.*

stātu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum, *I determine.*

stipendiārius (adj.), *tributary.*

strin-go, -gere, -xi, strictum, *I draw*  
(from a sheath).

stūdi-um, -i (n.), *pursuit; study.*

suc-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum,  
*I come up.*

suc-cumbo, -cumbere, -cūbui, -cūbi-  
tum, *I yield.*

suf-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *I*  
*suffice.*

suffrāgi-um, -i (n.), *vote.*

summus (adj.), *greatest; highest.*

sūper (gov. acc.), *upon; after.*

sūpēri-or, -us (adj.), *former; higher.*

sūpēr-o, -āre, *I overcome; defeat.*

suus (adj.), *his; their.*

tācītus (adj.), *silent; in silence.*

tam, *so.*

tāmen, *nevertheless; still.*

tamquam, *as; as if; like.*

tandem (in questions), *pray.*

tanti (gen. of value), *so highly.*

tantus (adj.), *so great.*

tēl-um, -i (n.), *weapon; missile.*

tēmērit-as, -ātis (f.), *rashness.*

tempest-as, -ātis (f.), *storm.*

temp-us, -ōris (n.), *time.*

tēn-eo, -ēre, *I hold.*

tent-o, -āre, *I try.*

terg-um, -i (n.), *back.*

terra (f.), *land.*

terrītus (partic.), *terrified.*

terr-or, -ōris (m.), *alarm.*

Tertia, *a girl's name.*

tertius (adj.), *third.*

tīm-eo, -ēre, -ui, *I fear.*

tīm-or, -ōris (m.), *fear.*

tot (adj. indecl.), *so many.*

tōtus (adj.), *whole.*

trādū-co, -cēre, -xi, -ctum, *I take*  
*across.*

Transalpīnus (adj.), *Transalpine.*

trans-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, *I*  
*transfer.*

trēpidāti-o, -ōnis (f.), *panic.*

trīgintā, *thirty.*

tristīcūlus (adj.), *rather sad.*

tristis (adj.), *sad.*

trūcid-o, -āre, *I massacre.*

tu, thou; you.

tum, then.

tūmūl-us, -i (m.), *mound.*

turma (f.), *troop; squadron (of*  
*cavalry).*

turpis (adj.), *disgraceful.*

tūtē (adv.), *safely.*

tuus (adj.), *thine; yours.*

ulcisc-or, -i, ultus, *I avenge.*

ullus (adj.), *any.*

unde, *whence; from which point.*

unquam, *ever; at any time.*

ūn-us, -ius (adj.), *one; alone.*

urb-s, -is (f.), *city.*

ūt, *that; so that; in order that; how*  
(141); *when* (89).

ūter, utra, utrum, *which (of two).*

vāl-eo, -ēre, -ui, *I am well; am able*  
*to.* vālē, *farewell.*

vall-um, -i (n.), *rampart.*

vārius (adj.), *various; diversified.*

vectig-al, -ālis (n.), *tribute; tax.*

vel, *or.*

vēn-io, -īre, vēni, ventum, *I come.*

vent-us, -i (m.), *wind.*

vēr-eor, -ēri, -ītus, *I respect.*

vēro, *but; however.*

vēr-us (adj.), *true.*

vesp-er, -ēri (m.), *evening.*

vexāti-o, -ōnis (f.), *oppression.*

vīa (f.), *way.*

vict-or, -ōris (adj.), *victorious.*

victōria (f.), *victory.*

vīd-eo, -ēre, vidi, visum, *I see.*

vīd-eor, -ēri, visus, *I seem.*

vīg-eo, -ēre, -ui, *I am strong.*

vinc-o, -ēre, vici, victum, *I conquer.*

vīnea (f.), *vineyard.*

**vir, vīri** (m.), *man.*

**vīr-es, -ium** (f.), *strength.*

**vīs, vim, vi** (f.), *violence ; force.*

**vīta** (f.), *life.*

**vīt-is, -is**, *vine.*

**vīti-um, -i** (n.), *fault ; defect.*

**vīvus** (adj.), *alive.*

**vōlo, velle, vōlui**, *I wish.*

**vōlunt-as, -ātis** (f.), *a wish.*

**vox, vōcis** (f.), *voice ; expression ; utterance.*

**vulnēr-o, -āre**, *I wound.*

**vuln-us, -ēris** (n.), *wound.*



## II.—ENGLISH - LATIN.

**abandon, I** (a person), *dē-sum, -esse, -fui* (gov. dat.); *dē-sēro, -serēre, -serui, -sertum*.

**ability, ingēnium** (n).

**about** (prep.), *dē* (gov. abl.).

**about** (adv.), *fēre*; *circīter* (with numerals).

**abroad, mīlītiāe** (206).

**absent, absen-s, -tis**.

**accept, I**, *ac-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*.

**accomplish, I**, *per-ficio, -ficēre, -fēci, -fectum*; *efficio*.

**accomplishments, ar-s, -tis** (f.).

**accord, of their own, sponte suā**.

**accordance with, in, sēcundum** (gov. acc.); *convēnienter* (with dat.).

**according to, pro** (gov. abl.).

**account, an, rāti-o, -ōnis** (f.).

**account, of less, infēri-or, -us**.

**account of, on, propter** (gov. acc.).

**accusation, an, crim-en, -inis** (n.).

**accuse, I**, *accūs-o, -āre*.

**accustomed, I am, sōl-eo, -ēre, sōlītus**.

**achievements, res gestae** (f. pl.); the achievements of Pompeius, *res a Pompeio gestae* or *ea quae gessit Pompeius*.

**acknowledge, I**, *fāte-or, -ēri, fassus*.

**acquit, I**, *ab-solvo, -solvēre, -solvi, -sōlūtum*.

**across, trans** (gov. acc.).

**actually, re ipsā**; *ētiam*.

**added, there is, ac-cēdit, -cedere, -cessit**; to this, *huc*.

**address, I**, *al-lōquor, -lōqui, -locūtus* (gov. acc.).

**admit, I**, *fāte-or, -ēri, fassus*; *con-fīte-or, -ēri, confessus*.

**advance, I**, *pro-cēdo, -cedēre, -cessi, -cessum*; *prō-grēdior, -gredi, -gressus*.

**advance** (to the attack), *I, signa, infero, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum* (= I carry on the standards).

**advise, I**, *suād-eo, -ēre, suasi, suasum* (gov. dat.); *admōneo* (gov. acc.).

**Aedui, the, Aedu-i, -ōrum** (m. pl.).

**Aeneas, Aene-as, -ae** (m.).

**affair, an, res, rei** (f.).

**affected, I am, commōve-or, -ēri, commōtus**.

**affection, cārīt-as, -ātis** (f.); *ām-or, -ōris* (m.).

**affirm, I**, *affirm-o, -āre*.

**affliction, maer-or, -ōris** (m.).

**afford, I**, *praeb-eo, -ēre, ui, -itum*.

**afraid, I am, vēr-eor, -ēri, verītus**.

**afresh, de integro**.

**after** (prep.), *post* (gov. acc.).

**after** (conj.), *postquam*; *posteaquam*.

**afterwards, postea**; *post*; *posthac*.

**again, rursus**; (= a second time), *itērum*; (= afterwards), *postea*.

**against, contrā** (gov. acc.).

**age, aet-as, -ātis** (f.).

**age of, at the, nātus** (partic.); she is ten years of age, *dēcem annos nata est*, or *decimum annum agit*.

**ago, abhinc** (201).

**agree with, I**, *consen-tio, -tīre, -si, -sum* (with = *cum* with abl.).

**agreeable, grātus**; *iucundus*.

**agreed, it is** (= it is a fact), *constat, constare, constitit* (16); it is universally agreed, *constat inter omnes*; (= it is arranged), *con-vēnit, -venīre, -vēnit*.

**aid, auxiliūm** (n.).

**aim to, I make it my, id āgo ut**.

aims, *e.g.*, my aims are these, *haec sequor* (82).

alike (adv.), *pārīter*.

alive, *viv-us, -a, -um*.

all, *omnis*; *nemo non* (258); (= whole), *tōtus*; sometimes expressed by *quicquid* or *quantum* with partitive genitive, as *quicquid militum erat*, all the soldiers there were.

Allobroges, the, *Allobrog-es, -um* (m. pl.).

allow, *I* (= permit), *sīn-o, -ēre, sīvi, sītum*; (= admit), *fāteor*; *I* am allowed, *mīhi licet* (86).

ally, *an, soci-us, -i* (m.).

almost, *prōpe*; (= about), *fēre*; (= not quite), *paene*.

alone, *sōlus*; (when emphatic), *ūnus*.

alphabet, *ēlēmēnt-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

already, *iam*.

although, *quamquam*; *quamvis*; *etsi*; *ut*; *cum* (Ch. XXXVII.).

always, *semper*; *nunquam non*.

am, *I, sum, esse, fui*.

am able, *I, possum, posse, pōtui*.

ambassador, *an, lēgāt-us, -i* (m.).

ambuscade, *an, insidi-ae, -ārum* (f. pl.).

ancestors, *māior-es, -um* (m. pl.).

ancient, *antīquus*; *vēt-us, -ēris*.

and, *et*; *-que*; *atque*; *ac* (not before vowels); and not, *nēque*.

anger, *ira* (f.).

angrily, *irātus* (adj. 73).

angry with, *I* am, *irasc-or, -i, -irā-*

angry, *I* become, *tus* (gov. dat.).

animal, *an, bestia* (f.).

announce, *I, nunti-o, -āre*.

another, *alius*.

answer, *I, respon-deo, -dēre, -di, -sum*.

antiquity, *vētust-as, -ātis* (f.).

Antony, *Antōni-us, -i* (m.).

anxious, *I* am, *stūd-eo, -ēre, -ui*.

any, *quis* (250); *quīvis, quilibet* (251); *quisquam, ullus* (249).

appear, *I* (= *I* seem), *vid-eor, -ēri, visus*.

apprehension, *mēt-us, -ūs* (m.).

approach, *I, advent-o, -āre*; *ac-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessi, -cessum* (both verbs intrans.).

approach, the, *advent-us, -ūs* (m.).

approve, *I, prōb-o, -āre*; *approbo*.

Aquileia, *Aquileia* (f.), name of a town.

argue, *I, dispūt-o, -āre*.

Ariovistus, *Ariovist-us, -i* (m.).

arise, *I, exōr-ior, -īri, exortus*; *ex-sist-o, -ēre, exstiti*.

armed,

armed man, *an, } armātus* (partic.).

Armenian, *Armēnius*.

arms (weapons), *arm-ā, -ōrum* (n.).

army, *an, exercit-us, -ūs* (m.).

arraign, *I, accūs-o, -āre*.

arrange, *I, dis-pōno, -ponēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum*.

arrival, *advent-us, -ūs* (m.).

arrive at, *I, per-vēnio, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum* (ad with acc.) (and see) (11).

art, *an, ar-s, -tis* (f.).

as, *ut* (839).

as far as (conj.), *quod*; *quantum*.

as it were, *tamquam*; *quāsi* (344)

as long as, *quamdū*; *dum*.

as much as, *quantum*; *tantum quantum*.

as soon as, *cum primum*; *simul ac* or *atque* (263).

as though, *tamquam*; *quāsi*; *vēlut* (343).

as well as, *aeque ac*; *iuxta ac* or *atque*.

ascend the throne, *I, regnum excipio*.

ascertain, *I, comp-ērio, -perīre, -pēri, -pertum*; *cog-nosco, -noscēre, -nōvi, -nītum*.

ashamed, *I* am, *me pūdet* (34).

Asia, *Asia* (f.).

ask, *I, rōg-o, -āre*; *interrog-o, quaer-o, -ēre, quaesivi, quaesitum* (6 obs.).

assemble, *I* (intrans.), *con-vēnio, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum*.

assembly, *an, cōmīti-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

assert, *I, affirm-o, -are*; (if assertion is untrue), *dictit-o, -āre*.

assist (see under "help").

assistance, *an, auxiliūm* (n.).

assuredly, *certē*.

at, *ad* (gov. acc.); at the feet, *ad* or *ante pēdes*.

at any time, *quando*, after *si*, *num*,  
or *ne*.

at first, *primo*.

at last, *tandem*.

at least, *certe* ; *saltem* ; *at* ; *tāmen*.

at length, *tandem* ; *aliquando*.

at once, *statim*.

Athens, *Athēn-ae*, *-ārum* (f. pl.).

attach myself, *I*, *me adiun-go*, *-gēre*,  
*-ri*, *-ctum* (with dative or *ad* and  
acc.).

attack, *I*, *ādōr-ior*, *-īri*, *adortus* ;  
*impētum* *fācio* (*in* with acc.) ; (*a*  
place or town), *oppugn-o*, *-āre*.

attain to, *I*, *pervēnio ad*.

attempt, *I*, *cōn-or*, *-āri* (168).

authority, *an* (persons), *auct-or*, *-ōris*  
(m.).

avail myself of, *I*, *ūt-or*, *-i*, *usus*  
(gov. abl.).

avenge, *I*, *ulcisc-or*, *-i*, *ultus*.

aver, *I*, see *assert*.

averse to, *aversus a* (with abl.).

avoid, *I*, *vīt-o*, *-āre*.

away, to be, *ābesse*, *āfui*.

bad, *imprōbus* ; *mālus*.

badly, *mālē*.

baggage, the, *impēdiment-a*, *-ōrum*  
(n. pl.).

ball, *a*, *pīla* (f.) ; at ball, *pīlā*.

banish, *I*, *in exīlium* *pell-o*, *-ēre*, *pēp-ūli*,  
*pulsum* ; *ex-īgo*, *-īgēre*, *-ēgi*,  
*-actum*.

bankrupt, *I am*, *non sum solvendo*  
(221).

barbarian, *a*, *barbār-us*, *-i* (m.).

barely, *vix*.

battle, *a*, *proelium* (n.) ; *pugna* (f.).

bear in mind, *I*, *mēmōriā* *tēn-eo*, *-ēre*,  
*-ui*.

beat, *I* (= defeat), *vinc-o*, *-ēre*, *vīci*,  
*victum*.

beautiful, *pulch-er*, *-ra*, *-rum*.

because, *quod* ; *quīa* (305, 308).

become, *I*, *fīo*, *fīēri*, *factus*.

bee, *a*, *āp-is*, *-is* (f.).

before (prep.), *ante* (gov. acc.).

before (adv.), *antea*.

before (conj.), *antēquam* ; *priusquam*  
(274, 278).

beg for, *I*, *pēt-o*, *-ēre*, *-īvi*, *-ītum*  
(gov. acc.).

begin, *I*, *in-cipio*, *-cipēre*, *-cēpi*, *-cep-  
tum* ; *in-eo*, *-īre*, *-iī*, *-ītum* ; *coep-i*,  
*-isse* ; (sometimes expressed by im-  
perfect tense).

begin battle, *I*, *pugnam* *com-mitto*,  
*-mittēre*, *-misi*, *-missum*.

behalf of, *on*, *pro* (gov. abl.).

believe, *I*, *crē-do*, *-dēre*, *-dīdi*, *-dītum*  
(gov. dat. of person), and see (2).

benefit, *I*, *prō-sum*, *-desse*, *-fui* (32).

bequeath, *I*, *līg-o*, *-āre*.

besiege, *I*, *ob-sīdeo*, *-sīdēre*, *-sēdi*,  
*-sessum*.

best, *optīmus*.

bestow, *I*, *impert-io*, *-īre* ; *larg-ior*,  
*-īri*, *-ītus* ; *tribū o*, *-ēre*, *-i*, *-tum*  
(acc. of thing and dat. of person).

betake myself, *I*, *me con-fēro*, *-ferre*,  
*-tūli*, *-lātum*.

betray, *I*, *prō-do*, *-dēre*, *-dīdi*, *-dītum*.

betray, *I* (= show), *ostend-o*, *-ēre*, *-i*,  
*ostentum* and *ostensum*.

better (adj.), *mēli-or*, *-us*.

between, *inter* (gov. acc.).

beware, *I*, *cāv-eo*, *-ēre*, *cāvi*, *cautum*.

bid, *I*, *iūb-eo*, *-ēre*, *iussi*, *iussum*.

bind, *I*, *vinc-io*, *-īre*, *vinxi*, *vinc-tum*.

bitterly, *vēhēmēter* ; *acerbē*.

blame, *I*, *culp-o*, *-āre*.

blaze fiercely, *I*, *incendio* *conflagr-o*,  
*-āre* (lit., *I* blaze with fire).

blessing, *a*, *commōdum* (n.).

blockade, *I*, *ob-sīdeo*, *-sīdēre*, *-sēdi*,  
*-sessum*.

blood, *san-guis*, *-guinis* (m.).

boast, *I*, *glōri-or*, *-āri* ; *I* boast of,  
*glorior dē* (with abl.).

bodily (72, d).

body, *a*, *corp-us*, *-ōris* (n.).

bold, *auid-ax*, *-ācis*.

book, *a*, *līber*, *libri* (m.).

booty, *praeda* (f.).

born, *I am*, *nasc-or*, *-i*, *nātus*.

borrow, *I*, *mūtu-or*, *-āri*.

both . . . and, *et . . . et*.

both (= either), *ūterque*.

bound, *I am*, *dēb-eo*, *-ēre*, *-ui* (24).

boy, *pu-er*, *-eri* (m.).

boyhood, from, *a puero* ; *a pueris*.

brave, *fortis*.

bravely, *fortiter*.

break, I, *frang-o, -ĕre, frēgi, fractum*.

break down, I, *inter-scindo, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum*.

break my word, I, *fīdem fall-o, -ĕre, fēfelli, falsum*.

break open, I, *re-fringo, -fringĕre, -frēgi, -fractum*.

break out, I, *exardesc-o, -ĕre, exarsi*.

break (the law), I, *viol-o, -āre*.

breed, I (= bring up), *ēdūc-o, -āre*.

bribe, a, *pēcūnia* (f.).

bridge, a, *pon-s, -tis* (m.).

bring, I, *dēdūc-o, -ĕre*.

bring across, I, *transdūc-o, -ĕre*.

bring back, I, *rēd-igo, -igere, -ēgi, -actum*.

bring forward, I, *prō-fĕro, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; affero*.

bring to, *affero* (hoc tibi affero); *addūc-o, -ĕre*.

bring up, I, *sub-vĕho, -vehĕre, -vexi, -vectum*.

broad, *lātus*.

brother, *frāt-er, -ris* (m.).

Brundisium, *Brundisium* (n.), name of a town.

building, a, *aedificium* (n.).

bulwark, a (metaphorical), *prōpugn-ācūlum* (n.).

burn, I, *incen-do, -dĕre, -di, -sum*.

business, *res, rēi* (f.); *nēgōtium* (n.).

business, I make it my, *id āgo ut*.

but, *sed; vērum* (emphatic, stands first in sentence); *vĕro* (stands second, emphasising preceding word); *autem* (not emphatic, marks transition, stands second).

but (= except), *praeter* (gov. acc.).

but if, *quod si* (324); *sin* (325).

buy, *ēm-o, -ĕre, ēmi, emptum*.

by (expressing agency), a; *ab* (with abl.).

by (with dates), *ad* (with acc.).

by far, *ūnus* (289).

bystanders, the, *ei qui adstant*.

Caesar, *Caes-ar, -āris* (m.).

call, I, *vōc-o, -āre*; I call you wise, *te sāpientem appell-o, āre* (8).

call, I (= I summon), *convōc-o, -āre*.

call upon you, I (= I demand), *pos-tul-o, -āre* (6 obs.).

called, I am, *vōc-or, -āri; appell-or, -āri*.

calmness, *aequus animus*.

camp, the, *castr-ā, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

campaign, a, *bellum* (n.).

can, I, *possum, posse, pōtui*.

capacities, *ingĕnium* (n.).

capitulation, *dēditi-o, -ōnis* (f.).

captive, a, *captiv-us, -i* (m.).

capture, I, *cāp-io, -ĕre, cēpi, captum*; the capture of the city, *urbs capta* (52).

care (to), I do not, *nōlo, nolle, nōlui*.

care, it is my, *mīhi est cūrae* (40).

care, I do not, *nīhil meā rĕfert* (37).

carelessness, *sōcordia* (f.).

carry on, I (a pursuit), *exerc-eo, -ĕre, -ui*.

carry on, I (war), *gĕr-o, -ĕre, gessi, gestum*; I carry on war against, *bellum gero cum* (abl.) or *contra* (acc.).

carry out, I, *ex-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus*.

Carthage, *Carthāg-o, -inis* (f.).

Carthaginians, the, *Poen-i, -ōrum*, (m. pl.).

case, the, *causa* (f.).

case, it is the, *fit, fiĕri, factum est*.

case of, in the, *in; de* (with abl.).

Catiline, *Catīlīn-a, -ae* (m.).

Cato, *Cāt-o, -ōnis* (m.).

cause, I, *af-fĕro, -ferre, attūli, allātum*.

cause (your), *res (tuae)* (f. pl.).

cavalry, the, *ēquīt-es, -um* (m. pl.).

cease, I, *de-sīno, -sīnĕre, -sīi, -sītum* (24).

centurion, a, *centūri-o, -ōnis* (m.).

certain, a, *quīdam* (256).

certain men who (87).

certain, I am, *pro certo hābeo* (lit., I hold it for certain).

certainly, *certē* (*certo* only used with *scio*).

change, I (trans.), *mūt-o, -āre*; (intrans.), *mūt-or, -āri*.

character, the, *mōr-es, -um* (m. pl.); what his character is = of what sort (*quālīs*) he is.

**charge, a** (= accusation), *crīm-en, -inis* (n.).

**charge, I** (= accuse), *reum fācio* (153).

**charge down, I**, *dē-curro, -currere, -curri* or *cūcurri; -cursum*.

**charge into, I**, *impētum fācio in* (with acc.).

**charge of the cavalry**, *ēques inmis-sus* (52).

**charm, I**, *dēlect-o, -āre*.

**charming** (adj.), *ēlēgan-s, -tis*.

**check, I**, *rētard-o, -āre*.

**cheerfully**, *liben-s, -tis* (adj. 73).

**chief man, the**, *prin-ceps, -cipis* (m.).

**child, a**, *parvūl-us, -i* (m.).

**children**, *libēr-i, -ōrum* (m. pl.).

**choose, I**, *ē-ligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum*; **I choose in preference**, *mālo . . . quam*.

**choose** (as leader), *I, cre-o, -āre*.

**Cicero**, *Cicēr-o, -ōnis* (m.).

**circumstance, a**, *res, rēi* (f.).

**circumstances, under these**, *quae cum ita sint* (which things since they are so).

**citizen, a**, *cīv-is, -is* (c.).

**city, a**, *urb-s, -is* (f.).

**clear, it is**, *appār-et, -ēre, -ui* (16).

**clear**, *clārus*.

**clearly**, *plāne*.

**clever**, *prūden-s, -tis*.

**client, my**, *hic* (as opposed to *iste*, 236).

**clock** (what o'clock is it?), *quōta hōra est?*

**close with, I**, *mānūs con-sēro, -serere, -serui, -sertum cum* (with abl.).

**closely**, *arctē*.

**cohort, a**, *cōhor-s, -tis* (f.).

**colleague, a**, *collēg-a, -ae* (m.).

**collect, I**, *col-ligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum*.

**combatants, the**, *pugnant-es, -ium*.

**come, I**, *vēn-io, -ire, vēni, ventum*.

**come to the aid, I**, *subvēnio* (gov. dat.); *auxilio vēnio* (40).

**come to this, it has**, *huc dēcidit* (impers.).

**come up, I**, *suc-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum* (in with acc.).

**command, a**, *dictum* (n.) (= word of command); *impērium* (n.).

**command, I**, *prae-sum, -esse, -fui* (32).

**commander, a**, *dux, dūcis* (m.); *impērāt-or, -ōris* (m.).

**commend, I**, *laud-o, -āre*.

**commit, I** (= entrust), *mand-o, -āre*.

**commit a crime, I**, *scēlus in me ad-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum*;

**I commit great crimes**, *magna de-linguo, -linguere, -liqui, -lictum*.

**common, commūn-is, -e**; **this is common to me and you**, *hoc mīhi tē-cum est commune*.

**compare, I**, *compār-o, -āre* (*hunc cum illo comparo*).

**compassion, misēricordia** (f.).

**compel, I**, *cō-go, -gēre, -ēgi, -actum* (with infin.).

**complain, I**, *quēr-or, -i, questus*.

**complement, nūmēr-us, -i** (m.).

**comply with, I**, *ob-sēquor, -sequi, -secutus*; *obsēcund-o, -āre* (both gov. dat.).

**composure, aequus ānimus**.

**conceal, I**, *cēl-o, -āre* (6).

**concentrate, I**, *cō-go, -gēre, -ēgi, -actum*.

**concern, a**, *res, rēi* (f.).

**concerned, I am**, *ad me attīnet* (impers.); **as far as I am concerned**, *quod attinet ad me*.

**concerning, dē** (gov. abl.).

**condemn, I**, *condemn-o, -āre* (153).

**conduct myself, I**, *mē gēro*.

**confess, I**, *fāt-eor, -ēri, fassus*.

**confused, I am**, *perturb-or, -āri; con-turbor*.

**conquer, I**, *vinc-o, -ēre, vīci, victum*.

**conscientious, sanctus**.

**consciousness, the, conscientia** (f.).

**consent, the, consens-us, -ūs**.

**conservative party, the, optimāt-es, -ium** (m. pl.).

**consider, I** (= regard), *dūc-o, -ēre, duxi, ductum*; (= I deliberate), *consult-o, -āre*.

**considerate, hūmānus**.

**consist in, to, situs esse in** (abl.).

**conspiracy, a, contūrāti-o, -ōnis** (f.).



conspirator, **a**, *coniūrāt-us*, -i (m.).  
 consul, **a**, *con-sul*, -sulis (m.).  
 consulship, the, *consulāt-us*, -ūs (m.).  
 consult, **I**, *consul-o*, -ēre, -ui, -tum (30).  
 consummate, *summus*.  
 contemporary, **a**, *aequāl-is*, -is (m.).  
 content, *contentus* (abl.).  
 contest, **a**, *certām-en*, -inis (n.).  
 continual, *assiduus*.  
 contrary to, *contrā* (prep. gov. acc.).  
 conversation, **I** have **a**, *col-lōquor*, -loqui, -lōcūtus (cum with abl.).  
 convict, **I**, *condemn-o*, -āre.  
 convince, **I**, *per-suādeo*, -suadēre, -suasi, -suasum (27 and 167 and 174).  
 copy, **I**, *imīt-or*, -āri.  
 Corinth, *Cōrīnth-us*, -i (f.).  
 corn, *frūment-um* (n.).  
 cost, **I**, *con-sto*, -stāre, -stīti; *sto* (194 b).  
 council, **a**, *concilium* (n.).  
 count, **I**, *nūmēr-o*, -āre.  
 country (= fatherland), *patria* (f.); (distinct from town), *rus*, *rūris*(n.); (territory), *āg-er*, -ri (m.).  
 country-house, *villa* (f.).  
 country, in the, *rusticus* (adj.).  
 countryman (fellow-), **a**, *civ-is*, -is (c.).  
 courage, *ānim-us*, -i (m.) (often in the plural).  
 court, **I**, *quaer-o*, -ēre, *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*.  
 courteous, *cōm-is*, -e.  
 courteously, *cōmiter*.  
 coward, **a**, *ignāvus*; *tīmīdus*.  
 cowardice, *ignāvia* (f.).  
 cowardly, *ignāvus*; *tīmīdus*.  
 craft without, *incallīdus* (adj.).  
 crafty, *callīdus*.  
 credit, the, *fīd-es*, -ei (f.).  
 crime, **a**, *fācīn-us*, -ōris (n.); *scel-us*, -ēris (n.) (*scelus* has the stronger meaning); *mālēfīcium* (n.).  
 crisis, **a**, *discrīm-en*, -inis (n.).  
 cross, **I**, *trā-icio*, -icēre, -icēci, -iectum; *trans-eo*, -īre, -īi, -ītum.  
 cross over, **I**, *trā-icio*; *me tra-icio*.  
 crowd, **a**, *turba* (f.); *multitūd-o*, -inis (f.).

crowds in, *frēquent-es*, -ium (adj. 73).  
 crush, **I**, *op-primo*, -primēre, -pressi, -pressum.  
 cry is raised, **a**, *conclamātur* (38).  
 cry, **I**, *exclām-o*, -āre.  
 cultivate, **I**, *cōl-o*, -ēre, -ui, -cultum.  
 custom, **a**, *institūtum* (n.); *consuetūd-o*, -īnis (f.).  
 dagger, **a**, *sīca* (f.).  
 daily (adv.), *cōtidie*; *in dies*, and *in dies singulos* (with comparatives, or where there is an idea of comparison); *diem de die* (day after day).  
 danger, *pērīcūlum* (n.).  
 dangerous, *infestus*.  
 dare, **I**, *aud-eo*, -ēre, *ausus*.  
 daughter, **a**, *fīlia* (f.).  
 day, *dī-es*, -ei (m.); *by day*, *interdiu*; *to-day*, *hōdie*.  
 day, every (see daily).  
 day before, the, *prīdie* (304).  
 day, (on) the next, *postrīdie*; *postēro die*.  
 daybreak, at, *lūcē prīmā*.  
 dead, *mortuus*.  
 deal of, **a** good, *ālīquantum* (with partitive genitive).  
 death, *mor-s*, -tis (f.); *intērīt-us*, -ūs (m.); **I** condemn to death, *cāpītis condemnō*.  
 debt, *aes āliēnum*, (gen.) *aeris alieni* (n.).  
 deceive, **I**, *dē-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpi, -ceptum.  
 decide, **I**, *stātu-o*, -ēre, -i, -tum; *constituo* (24); *dē-cerno*, -cernēre, -crēvi, -crētum.  
 decision, the, *arbitrium* (n.); *iūdicium* (n.).  
 declaration, *dēnūntiāti-o*, -ōnis (f.).  
 declare, **I**, *dīc-o*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*.  
 declare war, **I**, *bellum indic-o*, -ēre.  
 decline battle, **I**, *pugnam detrect-o*, -āre.  
 decree, **a**, *dēcrētum* (n.).  
 deed, **a**, *factum* (n.).  
 deem, **I**, *existim-o*, -āre.  
 deeply, *vēhēmēter*; *multum*.  
 defeat, **a**, *clād es*, -is (f.).



drag out, I, *prōtrāho*,

draw (a sword), I, *strin-go*, -gēre, -xi, *strictum*.

draw up (a line), I, *instru-o*, -ēre, -xi, -ctum.

draw up (a list), I, *con-ficio*, -fīcere, -fēcī, -fectum.

dread, a, *formīd-o*, -īnis (f.).

dread, I, *perhorr-eo*, -ēre, -ui (gov. acc.).

drive back, I, *pell-o*, -ēre, *pēpūli*, *pulsum*.

drop, I, *ō-mitto*, -mittēre, -mīsi, -missum.

due, *dēbitus*.

duty, a, *mūn-us*, -ēris (n.).

each, *quisque*, *quaeque* { *quidque* (pro.)  
*quodque* (adj.)

(247 and 248).

eagerly, *vēhēmentēr*.

eagerness, *ard-or*, -ōris (m.).

easily, *fācile*.

easy, *fācilis*.

effect, to the following, *in hunc mōdum* (in this way).

eight, *octo*.

eight hundred, *octingent-i*, -ae, -a.

eighty, *octōgintā*.

either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*; *vēl . . . vel* (when not emphatic, often = both . . . and).

either of two, *ūterque*, gen. *utri-usque*.

elect, I, *cre-o*, -āre.

elections, the, *cōmiti-a*, -ōrum (n. pl.).

eloquence, *ēlōquentia* (f.).

eloquent, *ēlōquen-s*, -tis.

embrace, I, *com-plector*, -plecti, -plexus.

emergency, an, *temp-us*, -ōris (n.) (197).

eminent, *praestan-s*, -tis.

emperor, the, *prin-ceps*, -cīpis (m.).

empire, the, *impērium* (n.).

encourage, I, *incīt-o*, -āre.

end, the, *fin-is*, -is (m.); (the end of (see (76)) . . .); the end of the world, *ultimae terrae*.

endanger, I (*in pēriculum* or *in discrimen vōco* (or *infēro*)).

endless, *infīnitus*.

endure, I, *per-fēro*, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum.

enemy (private), an, *īnīmīcus*.

enemy (public), an, *host-is*, -is (c.) (usually in plural).

engage, I (= fight), *dīmīc-o*, -āre (*cum* with abl.).

engaged in, I am, *vers-or*, -āri (in with abl.).

enjoy, I, *fru-or*, -i, *fructus* (gov. abl.).

enough, *sātis*; enough and more than enough, *sātis sūperque*; enough of this, *haec hactenus*.

ensue, I, *in-sēquor*, -sequi, -secūtus.

ensure, I, *prae-sto*, -stāre, -stīti.

enter, I, *in-grēdior*, -grēdi, -gressus; *intr-o*, -āre (both gov. acc.).

entire, *ūnīvers-us*, -a, -um.

entirely, *tōtus* (adj. 73).

entitled to, I am, *mīhi lic-et*, -ēre, *licuit* or *licitum est* (36).

entreat, I, *ōr-o*, -āre; *obsecr-o*, -āre; I earnestly entreat, *oro atque obsecro*.

entreaties, *prēc-es*, -um (f.).

entrenchment, an, *fossa* (f.).

entrust, I, *per-mitto*, -mittēre, -mīsi, *missum*; I entrust this to you, *hoc tibi permitto*; *committo*.

envious am, } I, *in-vidéo*, -vidēre, envy, } *-vidi*, -vīsum (27).

envoy, an, *lēgāt-us*, -i (m.).

equal, to, *cāp-ax*, -ācis (with gen.).

error, an, *err-or*, -ōris (m.).

escape, I, *ef-fūgio*, -fugēre, -fūgi; *ēlāb-or*, -i, *ēlapsus*.

estate, an, *praedium* (n.).

Etruscans, the, *Etrusc-i*, -ōrum (m. pl.).

even, *etiam* (precedes the word it emphasises); not even you, *nē tu quidem*.

even to, *usque ad* (with acc.).

ever (= at any time), *usquam*; (= always), *semper*.

every, *omnis*; everything, *omnia* (n. pl.); *quīvis* (251); every one (95).

evil, an, *mālum* (n.).

example, an, *exemplum* (n.) (40).

exceedingly, *vēhēmentēr*.

- excel**, I (intrans.), *ante-cēdo*, -*cēdere*, -*cessi*, -*cessum*.  
**excellent**, *optimus*.  
**except**, *praeter* (gov. acc.).  
**exchange**, I, *mūt-o*, -*āre* (194, d).  
**excite wonder**, I (see wonder).  
**exercise**, I, *exerc-eo*, -*ēre*.  
**exercise**, the, *āgītātī-o*, -*ōnis* (f.).  
**exhort**, I, *hort-or*, -*ārī*; *cōhortor*.  
**exigency**, *temp-us*, -*ōris* (n.).  
**exile**, the, *exilium* (n.).  
**expect**, I, *spēr-o*, -*āre*.  
**expedient**, *ūtilis*.  
**experience**, with no, *impērītus* (adj.).  
**explain**, I, *ex-pōno*, -*ponēre*, -*pōsui*, -*positum*.  
**exploits**, *res gestae* (lit. things done).  
**expose myself**, I, *me ob-īcio*, -*icēre*, -*īeci*, -*iectum*.  
**express thanks**, I, *grātias āgo*.  
**extent of the** (danger) = how great is the danger.  
**extortion**, *rēs rēpētundae*; *repetundae* (f. pl.).  
**extraordinary**, *incrēdibilis*; *singulāris*.  
**face**, I, *me of-fēro*, -*ferre*, *obtūli*, *oblātum*; I face death, *me mortī offero*; *mortī obviam eo*.  
**fact that**, the, *quod* (312).  
**fairly**, *sātis*.  
**fairness**, *aequīt-as*, -*ātis* (f.).  
**faithful**, *fidēlis*.  
**fall down**, I, *dē-cīdo*, -*cidēre*, -*cīdi*.  
**fall into**, I, *in-cīdo*, -*cidēre*, -*cīdi* (in with acc.).  
**false**, *falsus*.  
**fame**, *lau-s*, -*dis* (f.); *fāma* (f.).  
**family**, his, *su-i*, -*ōrum* (m. pl.).  
**famous**, *praeclārus*; the famous Alexander, *ille Alexander* (234).  
**fanaticism**, *rēligi-o*, -*ōnis* (f.).  
**farm**, a, *praedium* (n.).  
**farmhouse**, a, *villa* (f.).  
**fatal**, to be, *exitio* (from *exitium*) *esse* (40).  
**fate**, *exit-us*, -*us* (m.); (= fortune), *fortūna* (f.); *fātum* (n.).  
**father**, a, *pāt-er*, -*ris* (m.).  
**fathom**, I, *intel-lēgo*, -*legēre*, -*lexi*, -*lectum*.  
**fault**, a, *culpa* (f.).  
**favour**, I do a, *pergrātum facio*.  
**favour**, I, *fāv-eo*, -*ēre*, *fāvī*, *fautum* (27).  
**favour**, the, *grātia* (f.).  
**fear**, I, *tīm-eo*, -*ēre*, -*ui*; *mētū-o*, -*ēre*, -*ui*; *pertim-esco*, -*escēre*, -*ui*; *vēr-eor*, -*ēri*, *veritus* (69); *fearing*, *veritus*.  
**fear**, the, *mēt-us*, -*ūs* (m.).  
**feed**, I (trans.), *pasc-o*, -*ēre*, -*pāvi*, *pastum*; (intrans.), *pascor*.  
**feel**, I, *sent-io*, -*ire*, *sensi*, *sensum*.  
**feel shame**, I, *mē pūdet* (34).  
**feel sure**, I, *pro certo hāb-eo*, -*ēre*.  
**feelings**, the, *ānīm-us*, -*i* (m.).  
**fellow**, a, *hōm-o*, -*inis* (m.).  
**fellow**, the, *iste hōmo* (236).  
**fellow-citizen**, *civ-is*, -*is* (m.).  
**fetter**, a, *vinculūm* (n.).  
**few**, *pauc-i*, -*ae*, -*a*; **very few**, *per-pauci*.  
**fickleness**, *lēvīt-as*, -*ātis* (f.).  
**field**, *āg-er*, -*ri* (m.).  
**field of battle**, *āci-es*, -*ei* (f.).  
**fierce**, *āc-er*, -*ris*, -*re*; *atr-ox*, -*ōcis*.  
**fiercely**, *acrīter*; *atrōciter*.  
**fifteen**, *quindēcim*.  
**fifty**, *quingūagintā*.  
**fight**, a, *pugna* (f.).  
**fight**, I, *pugn-o*, -*āre*; I fight for life itself, *dē vītā ipsa dīmīc-o*, -*āre*.  
**fighting goes on**, *pugnātur* (pass. impers. 38).  
**fill up**, I, *com-pleo*, -*plēre*, -*plēvi*, -*plētum*.  
**filthy**, *sordīdus*.  
**finally**, *dēnīque*; *postrēmo*.  
**find**, I, *rēpēr-io*, -*ire*, *reppēri*, *rēper-tum*; *in-vēnīo*, -*venīre*, -*vēni*, -*ven-tum*; I find guilty, *condemn-o*, -*āre* (153).  
**find pleasure in**, I, *dēlect-or*, -*ārī* (with abl.).  
**fine**, in, *dēnīque*.  
**finish**, I, *con-fīcio*, -*fīcēre*, -*fēcī*, -*fec-tum*.  
**fire**, a, *ign-is*, -*is* (m.); with fire and sword, *ferro et igni* or *caede atque incendio*.  
**first**, the, *prīmus*.  
**firstly**, *primo*.

fish, *a, pisc-is, -is* (m.).  
 fitted for, *idoneus ad* (with acc.).  
 fit to, *idoneus qui* (with consecutive subjunctive).  
 five, *quinque*.  
 five times, *quinquies*.  
 fix, *I, in-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum*.  
 flag, the, *castrum* (n.).  
 flame, *a, flamma* (f.).  
 flee, *I, fug-io, -ere, fugi: profugio*.  
 flight, *fuga* (f.).  
 fling away, *I, ab-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum*.  
 fling myself, *I, me pro-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum: me pro-velo, -velare, -volui, -volutum*.  
 flourishing, *flören s. -tis*.  
 foe, *a, host-is, -is* (m.).  
 follow, *I, sequ-or, -i, secutus*.  
 folly, *stultitia* (f.).  
 foolish, *stultus*.  
 foolishly, *stulte*.  
 foot, *a, pes, pēs* (m.): the foot of the mountain, *latus mons* (76) or *radices montis* (literally, the roots of the mountain).  
 foot soldier, *a, pēd-es, -itis* (m.).  
 for (prep.), *pro* (gov. abl.): to die for one's country, *pro patriā mori*: (= on account of), *ob* (gov. acc.).  
 for (conj.), *nam* (stands first in sentence): *enim* (stands second in sentence).  
 for the sake of, *causā*.  
 force a way, *I, pre-rumpo: rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum*.  
 forced march, *a, magnum iter* (n.).  
 forces, *cōpi-ae, -arum* (f. pl.).  
 foreign, *extrānis*.  
 forget, *I, obli-vise-or, -i, oblitus*.  
 former, the, *ille* (233).  
 fortifications, the, *mūniment-a, -orum* (n. pl.).  
 fortify, *I, mūn-īo, -īre*.  
 fortunately, *opportune: peropportune*.  
 fortune, *fortuna* (f.).  
 forty, *quadrāgintā*.  
 forty times, *quadrāgies*.  
 foster, *I, al-o, -ere, -ai, -itum*.  
 found, *I, con-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum*.  
 foundation (of the city), the (see (52, c)).

four, *quattuor*.  
 four-days, *quadrīdium* (noun n.).  
 fourteenth, *quartus dēcimus*.  
 fourth, *quartus*.  
 free, *lib-er, -era, -erum*.  
 freedom, *libert-as, -ātis* (f.).  
 free from, *I am, cār-eo, -ēre, -ui* (gov. abl.).  
 freely, *libērē*.  
 frequently, *saepissimē: persaepe*.  
 friend, *a, amīc-us, -i* (m.); *fāmilīār-is, -is* (m.).  
 friendship, *amīcitia* (f.).  
 from, *a: ab: e: ex: dē* (according to context).  
 fruit, *a, pōmum* (n.).  
 fully, *pōne*.  
 further (adv.), *longius*.  
 further (adj.), *plur-es, -a*.  
 gain, *a, quae-st-us, -us* (m.).  
 gain, *I, adīpise-or, -i, adeptus: con-sequ-or, -i, consecutus*.  
 Gaius, *Gai-us, -i* (m.).  
 garden, *a, hort-us, -i* (m.).  
 garrison, *a, praesidiūm* (n.); *praesidia* (n. pl.).  
 gate, *a, porta* (f.).  
 gather, *I, evell-o, -ere, -i, evulsum*.  
 Gaul, *Gallia* (f.): (= inhabitant of Gaul), *Gallus* (m.).  
 general, *a, impērat-or, -ōris* (m.); *dux, dūcis* (m.).  
 generally, *pōtēranque*.  
 get, *I, compar-o, -āre*.  
 get hold of, *I, (pōt-er, -iri, -itus*  
 get possession of, *I, (gov. abl).*  
 give, *I, dō, dāre, dēdi, dātum*.  
 give back, *I, red-dō, -dēre, -didi, -ditum*.  
 give up, *I, trā-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum*.  
 give way, *I, cēd-o, -ere, cessi, cessum*.  
 glad, *laetus*.  
 glad, *I am, gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīsus: laet-or, -āri* (14).  
 go, *I, eo, īre, īci or ii, itum*.  
 go out, *I, ex-eo, -īre*.  
 go on, *I (= happen), fīo, fīēri, factus*.  
 God, *de-us, -i* (m.).  
 gold, *aurum* (n.).

good, *bōnus*.

good will, *bēnēvōlentia* (f.).

govern, I (my tongue), *tempēr-o*, -āre; *mōdēr-or*, -āri (both gov. dat. in this sense).

grandfather, *āv-us*, -i (m.).

grandson, *nēp-os*, -ōtis (m.).

granting that, *ut* (284).

great, *magnus*; this great man, *hic tantus vir*.

greatly, *multum*.

greatness, *dignit-as*, -ātis (f.).

Greece, *Graecia* (f.).

greedily, *āvidē*.

Greek (adj. and noun), *Graec-us*, -a, -um; a Greek (contemptuously), *Graecūlus*.

grief, *maer-or*, -ōris (m.).

grieved, I am, *dōl-eo*, -ēre, -ui (14).

ground (= place), *loc-us*, -i (m.); generally in plural, *loc-a*, -ōrum (n.).

grove, a, *luc-us*, -i (m.).

guarantee, I, *prae-sto*, -stāre, -stīti, -stītum; I guarantee your safety, *te saluum praesto*.

guard, to, *praesidio* (= for a guard, 40).

guide, a, *dux*, *dūcis* (m.).

guilt, *scēl-us*, -ēris (n.).

guilty, *nōcen-s*, -tis; son-s, -tis.

hair, the, *cāpill-i*, -ōrum (m. pl.).

halt, I, *sub-sisto*, -sistēre, -stīti.

hand, *mān-us*, -ūs (f.).

hand, I, *trā-do*, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum.

hand, I am at, *ad-sum*, -esse, -fui.

hang (over), I, *impēd-eo*, -ēre (with dat. of indirect object).

Hannibal, *Hannībal*, -ālis (m.).

happen, I, *ē-vēnio*, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum.

happens that, it, *accīdit ut* (91).

happiness, *vīta beāta*; *beate vivere* (23).

happy, *beātus*.

harbour, *port-us*, -ūs (m.).

hard, *difficilis*.

hard-hearted, *ferreus*.

hardly, *vix*; hardly yet, *vixdum*; hardly any one, *nēmo fere*.

hardship, a, *lāb-or*, -ōris (m.).

harm, I, *nōc-eo*, -ēre, -ui (27).

haste, *cēlērīt-as*, -ātis (f.).

hasten, I, *mātūr-o*, -āre (followed by infin.); *conten-do*, -dēre, -di; *festīn-o*, -āre.

hasty, *tēmērārius*.

hate, I, *ōd-i*, -isse, -eram (perf. with pres. meaning); I am hated, *ōdio sum* (40).

have an idea (see under "think").

have, I, *hāb-eo*, -ēre; I have a book, *est mihi liber*; I have a bridge made (227).

he, is, ea, id (231).

head, *cāp-ut*, -ītis (n.).

head of affairs, I am at the, *rei publicae prae-sum*, -esse, -fui.

hear, I, *aud-io*, -īre.

heaven, *di immortāles* (m. pl.), (= the sky) *caelum* (n.).

heir, an, *hēr-es*, *ēdis* (m.); sole heir, or heir to the whole estate (367).

helm, I am at the, *gūbern-o*, -āre.

help, I, *sub-vēnio*, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum (gov. dat.); *ōpem fero* (dat.); *ad-iūvo*, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum (gov. acc.).

help, I can not (93, d).

helpless, *ēgen-s*, -tis; *īnop-s*, -is.

her, *ēius*; *suus* (according to context) (5).

Heraclea, *Hēraclea* (f.) (a town).

here, I am, *ad-sum*, -esse, -fui.

hesitate, I, *dūbīt-o*, -āre (94).

Hiero, *Hīer-o*, -ōnis (m.).

high, *altus*.

higher (ground), *sūpēri-or*, -ōris.

highwayman, a, *latr-o*, -ōnis (m.).

hill, a, *coll-is*, -is (m.).

himself, *ip-se*, -sa, -sum.

hindrance, a, *impēdimentum* (n.) (40).

his, *ēius*; *suus* (according to context) (5).

his men, *su-i*, -ōrum.

history, *annāl-es*, -iūm (m. pl.).

hitherto, *adhuc*.

hold, I, *tēn-eo*, -ēre; I hold command over, *impērium tēneo in* (with acc.); I hold an office, *māgistrātum gēro*.



- home (to return), *dōmum* (11); at home, *dōmī*; *intus*; from home, *dōmo*.
- homestead, *a, villa* (f.).
- honest (of persons), *frūgi* (indecl., really a predicative dative).
- honour, *hōnest-as, -ātis* (f.).
- honourable, *hōnestus*; *amplus*.
- honoured, *hōnōrātus*.
- hook, *a, hām-us, -i* (m.).
- hope, *I, spēr-o, -āre* (13).
- hope, the, *spes, spēi* (f.).
- Horace, *Hōrāti-us, -i* (m.).
- horse, *a, ēqu-us, -i* (m.).
- horseback, on, *ex ēquo*.
- horseman, *a, ēqu-es, -itis* (m.).
- hour, an, *hōra* (f.).
- house, *a, aed-es, -ium* (f. pl. with sing. meaning).
- house, in my, *apud me*; *dōmī mēae*; in the house of Cicero, *apud Cicerōnem*; to the house of Cicero, *ad Ciceronem*.
- household, *a, fāmilia* (f.).
- how (with adj. and adv.), *quam*; *quōmōdō*; *quem ad mōdum*; *ut*; how do you do, *quid āgis*; how does it happen that, *qui fit ut* (108); how few there are who, *quōtus-quisque est qui* (with subjunct.); how great, *quantus*; how many, *quōt*; how much, *quantus*; how much better, *quanto mēlius*; how often, how many times, *quōties*.
- however, *tāmen*.
- human, *hūmānus*.
- humour, *I, mōrem gēro* (with dat. of indirect obj.).
- hundred, *a, centum* (288).
- hundred times, *a, centies*.
- hunger, the, *fām-es, -is* (f.).
- hurt, *I, offen-do, -dēre, -di, -sum*.
- hut, *a, cella* (f.).
- I, ēgo*.
- Ides, the, *Id-us, -uum* (f. pl.).
- idle, *ignāvus*.
- if, *si*; if not, *sin*; *si minus* (325).
- ignorant, *ignārus*; *indoctus*.
- ignorant, *I am, ignōr-o, -āre*, illegally, *iniuriā*.
- ill, *I am, aegrōt-o, -āre*.
- imagine, *I, existūm-o, -āre*.
- imitate, *I, imit-or, -āri*.
- imminent, *I am, immīn-eo, -ēre*; *impend-eo, -ēre* (both only have present stem).
- importance, it is of, *inter-est, -esse, -fui* (37).
- impossible that, it is quite, *non or nullo mōdo fieri pōtest ut*.
- in (in the pages of), *apud* (gov. acc.)
- inactive, *iner-s, -tis*.
- in the midst of, *inter* (gov. acc.); in (gov. abl.).
- inclined to, *I am, stūd-eo, -ēre, -ui* (gov. dat.).
- increase, *I* (intrans.), *cresc-o, -ēre, crēvi, crētum*; (trans.), *aug-eo, -ēre, auxi, auctum*.
- indeed, *vēro*; *quidem*.
- Indian, an, *Ind-us, -i* (m.).
- indignation, *ira* (f.).
- indoors, *intūs*; *dōmī* (206).
- induce, *I, ad-duc-o, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum*; *per-suādeo, -suadere, -suāsi, -suāsum* (gov. dat.) (167).
- inexperienced in, *impērītus* (with gen.).
- infamous, *infām-is, -e*.
- influence, the, *auctōrit-as, -ātis*.
- inform (Caesar), *I, (Caesarem) certiorē facio*; *I am informed, certior fīo, fieri, factus*; *dōc-eo, -ēre, -ui, doctum*.
- infringe, *I, perfring-o, -ēre, perfrēgi*.
- ingratitude, *ānimus ingrātus*.
- inherit, *I, ac-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum* (from *a* or *ab* with ablative).
- injure, *I, nōc-eo, -ēre, -ui, -itum* (27).
- innocent, *innōcen-s, -tis*.
- innovation, some, *ālīquid nōvi* (= something of new, 149, e).
- inquire, *I, quaer-o, -ēre, quaesīvi, quaesītum*.
- inquiry, an, *quaesti-o, -ōnis* (f.).
- instance, an, *exemplum* (n.).
- instead of (with verbal noun), *tantum ābest ut* (92); *cum dēbeas* (345, m).
- instruct, *I, prae-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum* (with dat. of person).





Lesbos, *Lesb-os*, -i (f.) (an island).  
 less (adv.), *minus*.  
 lest, *nē*.  
 let slip, I, *ō-mitto*, -mittere, -misi, -missum; *praetermitto*.  
 letter, a, *ēpistūla* (f.); *litter-ae*, -arum (f. pl.).  
 liberal, *hūmānus*.  
 liberty, *libert-as*, -ātis (f.).  
 lie in wait, I, *insidi-or*, -āri; *insidias facio* (both have indirect object in dat.).  
 lie open, I, *pāt-o*, -ēre, -ui.  
 lies with (you), it, *pēnes te est*.  
 lieutenant, a, *legātus*.  
 life, the, *vita* (f.).  
 light, the, *lūm-en*, -inis (n.); *lux*, *lūcis* (f.).  
 like, I, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui*.  
 like, as, *iuxtā ac* or *atque*; *aeque ac*.  
 likely to (future participle).  
 line of battle, a, *āci-es*, -ei (f.).  
 line on the march, *agm-en*, -inis (n.).  
 lip, a, *lābellum* (n.).  
 list, a, *rāti-o*, -ōnis (f.).  
 listen to, I, *aud-io*, -ire.  
 literary (= of literature).  
 literature, *littēr-ae*, -arum (f. pl.).  
 little (= few things), *pauca* (n. pl.).  
 little, { but, } *pārum* (adv.) (some-  
                   { too, } times with partitive  
                                   gen., 149).  
 live, I, *viv-o*, -ēre, *vixi*, *victum*.  
 living, *vivus* (adj.).  
 long (adj.), *longus*.  
 long (adv.), *dū*; *iamdūdum*; *iampridem*.  
 long ago, *iamdūdum*.  
 longer, no, *non iam*; *non diūtius* (if a considerable period has elapsed).  
 look, I, *a-spicio*, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum.  
 look on, I, *inspect-o*, -āre.  
 lose, I, *ā-mitto*, -mittere, -misi, -missum; (= I miss), *dē-sum*, -esse, -fui (32).  
 loss of, the (52, b).  
 lot, the, *sor-s*, -tis (f.).  
 loud, *clārus*; (as adv.), *magnā vōce*.  
 love, I, *ām-o*, -āre; (I esteem), *dī-ligo*, -ligere, -lexi, -lectum.

low, } *hūmīlis*.  
 lowly, }  
 loyalty, *fīd-es*, -ei (f.).  
 luck of, it is the, *contingit* (impersonal with dat. of person and infin. or *ut* with subjunct.).  
 made, peace is, *pax convēnit* (intrans.).  
 Maecenas, *Macōn-as*, -ātis (m.).  
 maid (servant), *ancilla* (f.).  
 make (oonsul), I, *fāc-io*, -ēre, *fēci*, *factum*; *cre-o*, -āre.  
 make (a speech), I, (*orātiōnem*) *hāb-co*, -ēre.  
 make use of, I, *ūt-or*, -i, *ūsus* (gov. abl.).  
 man, a (= human being), *hōm-o*, -inis (m.); (distinguished from woman), *vīr*, *vīr* (m.); a man who, *is qui* (291).  
 manage, I, *administr-o*, -āre; *cūr-o*, -āre.  
 many, *multus*; *plūrīmus*; very many, *permulti* (m. pl.).  
 Marcellus, *Marcell-us*, -i (m.).  
 march, a, *it-er*, -inēris (n.).  
 march, I, *it-er facio*.  
 marvellous, *incrēdibīlis*; *singulārīs*.  
 master, a (= teacher), *magist-er*, -ri (m.); (= lord), *domī-nus*, -i (m.); I am master of, *impēr-o*, -āre (gov. dat.).  
 matter, a, *res*, *rēi* (f.).  
 matters, it, *intērest*, -esse, *fui* (37).  
 may, I (= I am allowed), *mīhi licet* (36).  
 mean, I, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui*.  
 meet, I, *oc-curro*, -currere, -curri, -cursum; *obviam fīo*, *fīeri*, *factus*; *obviam eo* (all have dat.); (= I have an interview with), *con-venio*, -venire, -veni, -ventum (gov. acc.).  
 meet, to, *obviam* (with dat.).  
 meeting, a, *concīlium* (n.).  
 memory, the, *mēmōria* (f.).  
 mental (72, e).  
 mercy, I show, *pāre-o*, -ēre, *pāperi* (27).  
 mercy, to be at one's, *esse praedae* (40).

mere, *ip-se, -sa, -sum* (245, c).  
 merits, the, *virt-ūs, -ūtis* (f.).  
 message, a, *mandāt-a, -orum*  
 (n. pl.).  
 middle, } *mēdiūs* (76).  
 midst of the, }  
 mile, a, *mille passus* (1000 paces);  
 two miles, *duo millia passuum*.  
 military tactics, *res militāris* (f.).  
 mind, I am out of my, *insān-iō,*  
*-ire*.  
 mind, the, *ānīm-us, -i* (m.).  
 mind you, *cūrā ut; fac* (171).  
 misfortune, a, *cālāmīt-as, -ātis* (f.).  
 mistake, I make a, *err-o, -āre*; I  
 make a great mistake, *vēhē-*  
*menter erro*.  
 Mithridates, *Mithridāt-es, -is* (m.).  
 money, *pēcūnia* (f.).  
 month, a, *mens-is, -is* (m.).  
 moral worth, *virt-ūs, -ūtis* (f.).  
 more (as substantive), *plus, plūris*  
 (n.) (149, d); more things, *plūra*  
 (n. pl.); (as adv.), *magis*; the more  
 so, *eo magis*; (with numerals), *am-*  
*plius* (334).  
 morrow, to-, *crās* (adv.).  
 morrow's, to-, *crastīnus* (adj. 72).  
 mortal, a, *mortāl-is, -is* (m.); *hōm-o,*  
*-inis* (m.).  
 mortal (= deadly), *mortī-fer, -fēra,*  
*-ferum*.  
 most, } *plērīque* (m. pl.).  
 most men, }  
 most, at the, *summum* (adv.).  
 mother, a, *māt-er, -ris* (f.).  
 mount, I, *conscen-do, -dēre, -dī, -sum*.  
 move, I (trans.), *mōv-eo, -ēre, mōvi,*  
*mōtum*; commoveo; moved (in  
 mind), *permōtus*; (intrans.), *mōv-*  
*eor*.  
 much (adj.), *multus*.  
 much (adv.), *multum*; *vēhēmenter*;  
 (with comparatives), *multo*.  
 murder, I accuse of, *inter sīcārios*  
*accūs-o, -āre*.  
 murderers (his), *ei qui (illum) inter-*  
*fēcērunt*.  
 Muse, a, *Mūsa* (f.).  
 must (Ch. XXIX.).  
 muster I, *convōc-o, -āre*.

my, *meus*.  
 mysterious, *obscurus*.  
 name, a, *nōm-en, -inis* (n.).  
 name, I, *nōmīn-o, -āre*.  
 Naples, *Neāpōl-is, -is* (f.); (acc.),  
*Neapolim*; (abl.), *Neapolī*.  
 narrow, *angustus*.  
 narrow-minded, to be, *esse angustī*  
*ānīmī* (146).  
 nation, a, *gen-s, -tis* (f.).  
 naturally, *nātūrā*.  
 nature, *nātūra* (f.).  
 near, I am (to the town), *prōpe ab-*  
*sum ab oppīdo* (207).  
 nearer (adv.), *prōpius*.  
 nearest (adj.), *proximus*.  
 nearly, *fermē*; more nearly, *prōpius*;  
 I nearly perished (93, c).  
 neck, the, *cerv-ix, -icis* (f.).  
 need, there is, *opus est* (with abl.).  
 neither . . . nor, *nēque . . . neque*;  
*nec . . . nec*.  
 neutral, *ōtiōsus*.  
 neutral, to be, *neutrius partis esse*  
 (lit., to be of neither side).  
 never, *nunquam*; and never, *nec*  
*unquam*.  
 nevertheless, *tāmen*.  
 new, *nōvus*.  
 news, the, *nunti-us, -i* (m.).  
 news was brought, *nuntiātum est*  
 (16).  
 night, a, *nox, noctis* (f.); by night,  
*noctē*.  
 ninetieth, *nōnāgēsīmus*.  
 ninth, *nōnus*.  
 no (adj.), *nullus*; and no, *nec ullus*;  
*nēmo* (258).  
 no (adv.), *minīmē vērō* (120).  
 no one, { *nēm-o, -inis* (258); and no  
 none, } *one, nec quisquam*.  
 nobly, *praeclāre*.  
 Nones, the, *Nōnae* (f. pl.).  
 not, *nōn*; *nē* (according to con-  
 text).  
 not only, *non solum*; not only . . .  
 but also, *non solum . . . sed*  
*etiam*; *cum . . . tum* (273).  
 nothing, *nīhil* (indecl.); and noth-  
 ing, *nec quidquam*.

notice, I, *ānimad-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum*.

now, *nunc* (used only of present time or circumstances); *iam* (used of any time).

nowhere, *nusquam*; and nowhere, *nec usquam*.

Numa, *Nūm-a, -ae* (m.).

number, *a, nūmēr-us, -i* (m.); (= proportion), *par-s, -tis* (f.).

obey, I, *pār-co, -ēre*; *obtempēr-o, -āre* (27).

object of derision, *irrīs-us, -ūs* (m.).

obliged to, I am, see I must.

obtain, I, *ādīpisc-or, -i, adeptus*.

offer, I, *of-fēro, -ferre, obtūli, oblātum*; I offer (a crown), *dēfēro*.

offer brave resistance, I = I resist bravely.

office (political), *an, māgistrāt-us, -ūs* (m.).

officer, *an, lēgāt-us, -i* (m.); *tribū-nus mīlītāris* (m.).

often, *saepe*; *persaepe*; so often, *tōties*; so often as, *tōties quōties*.

old, *vēt-us, -ēris*: of old (adv.), *quondam*; she is ten years old, *dēcem annos nāta est* (200).

old age, *sēnect-ūs, -ūtis* (f.).

old man, *an, sēn-ex, -is* (m.).

on (= concerning), *dē* (gov. abl.); (= on to) in with acc.; (= in), in with abl.

on account of, *ob*; *propter* (gov. acc.). on the subject of, *dē* (gov. abl.).

once (= formerly), *ōīm*; *quondam*.

one (the number), *ūnus*.

one (a certain), *quīdam* (256); one of my friends, *quīdam ex amīcis meis*.

one, the . . . the other, *alter . . . alter* (117).

one and all, *omnes ad īnum*.

one . . . another, *alius . . . alius*.

one who, *is qui* (231).

only (adv.), *tantum*; *solum*.

only (adj.), *ūnus*.

onset, *an, impēt-us, -ūs* (m.).

open, { to be, } *pāt-ēre, -ui*  
          { to lie, }

opinion, *sententia* (f.).

opinion, I have *an, sent-io, -īre, sensi, sensum*.

opinion of, I have a high, *magni fācio* (gov. acc.).

opinion, in my, *me iūdīce* (54); *meā quīdem sententiā*.

opponent, *an, adversāri-us, -i* (m.), (and see) (236).

opportunity, *an, occāsi-o, -ōnis* (f.); *fācult-as, -ātis* (f.) (only with genitive depending).

oppose, I, *rē-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti* (27); *advers-or, -āri* (gov. dat.).

opposed to, *contrārius*.

opposition to, in, *contrā* (gov. acc.).

or, *aut*; *vel*; -*ve*; (in questions), *an*; or not, *an non*; *necne* (185); either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*; *vel . . . vel*.

orator, *an, ōrāt-or, -ōris* (m.).

order, by the, *iussū* (with genitive depending).

order, I, *iub-eo, -ēre, iussi, iussum* (168); *impēr-o, -āre* (167).

ordinary, *commūn-is, -e*.

originator, the, *auct-or, -ōris* (m.).

others, the, *cēteri* (261).

others, *alii*.

others-of, *aliēnus* (adj., 72).

ought, I, *dēb-eo, -ēre, -ui* (211); *oportet* (212).

our, *nost-er, -ra, -rum*; our men, *nostrī*.

out of, *e*; *ex* (gov. abl.).

outrage, *an, flāgītium* (n.); *scēl-us, -ēris* (n.).

outside of, *extrā* (gov. acc.).

overcome, I, *sūpēr-o, -āre*.

owe, I, *dēb-eo, -ēre, -ui, -itum*.

own, my, *meus*; our own, *noster*.

painful, to be, *esse dōlōri* (40); very painful, *magno or maximo dolori*.

palace, the, *rēgia* (f.); *dōmus rēgia*.

pardon, I, *ig-nosco, -noscere, -nōvi, -nōtum* (gov. dat.); I pardon you this, *hoc tibi condōn-o, -āre*.

parent, *a, pāren-s, -tis* (c.).

part, *a, par-s, -tis* (f.); it is the part of (146).

part, for my, *equidem* (in contrasting sentence insert *verò*).

part, I take, *vers-or*, *-āri*.

parts (= places), *orae*; *rēgiōnes* (f. pl.).

pass (my life), I, (*vitum*) *āgo*, *agere*, *ēgi*, *actum*.

pass over, I, *praeter-eo*, *-īre*, *-ii*, *-itum*; *praeter* - *mitto*, *-mittēre*, *-misi*, *-missum*.

past, the, *praeterit-a*, *-ōrum* (n. pl.) (82).

path, the (metaphorical), *ādīt-us*, *-ūs* (m.).

patriotic party, the, *bōni cīves* (m. pl.).

pay, I, *solv-o*, *-ēre*, *-i*, *sōlūtum*; I pay you the penalty, *poenas tibi solvo* or *do*.

pay attention to, I, *ōpēram do*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*.

peace, the, *pax*, *pācis* (f.); peace is being made, *pax convēnit*.

penalty, a, *poena* (f.).

people, the, *pōpūl-us*, *-i* (m.); many people, *multī hōmīnes*.

perceive, I, *intel-lēgo*, *-lēgere*, *-lēxi*, *-lectum*.

perhaps, *fortasse* (with indic.); *fortisitan* (with subjunct., 132).

peril, a, *pēricūlūm* (n.).

perish, I, *pēr-eo*, *-īre*, *-ii*, *-itum*.

Persian, a, *Pers-a*, *-ae* (m.).

person, a, *vir*, *virī* (m.); *hōm-o*, *-inis* (m.).

personal (246).

persuade, I, *per-suādeo*, *-suadēre*, *-suasi*, *-suasum* (27 and 174).

philosopher, a, *philōsōph-us*, *-i* (m.).

pitch, I, *pōn-o*, *-ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*.

pity, I, *mē misēret* (34); *misēr-eor*, *-ēri*, *-ītus* (gov. gen.); *misēr-or*, *-āri* (gov. acc.).

place, a, *lōc-us*, *-i* (m.).

plain, it is, *mānifestum est*; *appāret* (16).

plan, a, *consilium* (n.).

plant, I, *sēr-o*, *-ēre*, *sēvi*, *sātum*.

planted, to be, *insidēre*, *-sēdi*, *-sesum*.

platform, a, *suggest-us* *-ūs* (m.).

Plato, *Plāt-o*, *-ōnis* (m.).

play, I, *lūd-o*, *-ēre*, *lūsi*, *lūsum*.

pleasant (of places), *āmoenus*.

please, I, *plāc-eo*, *-ēre* (27).

pleasure, the, *vōlupt-as*, *-ātis* (f.); it is my pleasure, *mīhi placet*.

plunder, I, *dī-rīpio*, *-rīpēre*, *-rīpui*, *-reptum*; *expīt-o*, *-āre*.

Po, the, *Pād-us*, *-i* (m.).

poet, a, *poēt-a*, *-ae* (m.).

point, at that, *ibi*.

point of, I am on, *in eo est ut* (345, k).

point out, I, *dēmōnstr-o*, *-āre*.

policy, his = his plans.

politics, *rēs publicā* (or in political life, ) plural).

poor, *paup-er*, *-ēris*; the poor, *pauper-es*, *-um* (m. pl.).

porch, the, *vestibūlūm* (n.).

position, *fortūna* (f.).

possess, I, *pos-sīdeo*, *-sidēre*, *-sēdi*, *-sessum*.

possible that, it is, *fīrī potest ut* (91).

posterity, *postēr-i*, *-ōrum* (m. pl.).

postpone, I, *dif-fēro*, *-ferre*, *dīstūli*, *dīlātum*.

pour, I (intrans.), *effund-or*, *i*, *effūsus*.

power, *vis*, *vim*, *vi* (f.).

power to, I have, *vāl-eo*, *-ēre*, *-ui* (ad with gerundive constr.).

praetor, a, *praet-or*, *-ōris* (m.).

praise, I, *laud-o*, *-āre*; I praise him to the skies, *eum ad caelum laudibus fēro*.

pray, I, *prēc-or*, *-āri*; how long, pray, *quousque tandem* (tandem in this sense is also found with imperatives).

pray for, I, *opt-o*, *-āre*.

prayers, *prēc-es*, *-um* (f. pl.).

precedent, a, *exemplum* (n.).

prefer, I, *mālo*, *malle*, *malui* (with verbs); *ante-pōno*, *-ponēre*, *-posui*, *-pōsitum* (with direct and indirect obj.).

prepare for war, I, *bellum pār-o*, *-āre*.

preposterous, *rīdicūlus*.

presence of, in the, *cōram* (gov. abl.).



present, I, *of-fēro, -ferre, obŭli, oblātum* (31).

present, I am, *ad-sum, -esse, -fui*.

present (time), the, *praesenti-a, -um* (n. pl.).

present moment, at the, *nunc maximē*.

preside over, I, *prae-sum, -esse, -fui* (32).

press on, I (intrans.), *in-sto, -stāre, -stīti*.

prestige, the, *auctōrit-as, -ātis* (f.).

pretend, I, *simūl-o, -āre* (15).

prevail, I, *vāl-eo, -ēre, -ui*.

prevent, I, *prōhib-eo, -ēre* (97); *impēd-io, -īre, -ii, -itum*; *ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti* (gov. dat. of person).

previously, *antea*.

price that, at the, *tanti quanti* (158).

prisoner, a (legal), *re-us, -i* (m.).

probably, *haud scio an* (132).

proclaim, I, *in-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum*.

produce, the, *fruct-us, -ūs* (m.).

proficient, *exercitātus*.

profit, a, *emolūmentum* (n.).

promise, I, *pollic-ecr, -eri, -itus*; *prō-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum* (13).

pronounce, I, *iudic-o, -āre*.

proof, a, *dōcūmentum* (n.); to be a proof, *esse dōcūmento* (40).

property, *bōna* (n. pl.).

prosperity, *flōrēre* (23).

protect, I, *dēfen-do, -dēre, -di, -sum*.

protection, a, *praesidium* (n.); as a protection or to protect, *praesidio* (40).

provide for, I, *prō-vīdeo, -videre, -vīdi, -vīsum* (with dat. of person).

provided that, *dummōdō* (279).

province, a, *prōvincia* (f.).

provoke, I, *lācess-o, -ēre, -īvi, -itum*.

prudent, *prūden-s, -tis*.

punish (him), I, (in eum) *ānimadver-to, -tēre, -ti, -sum*; (de eo) *poenas sūm-o, -ēre, -psi, -ptum*.

purchase, I, *ēm-o, -ēre, ēmi, emptum*.

purposely, *consulō*.

pursue, I, *per-sēquor, -sequi, -secūtus*.

pursuit, a (= object aimed at), *stūdium* (n.).

put, I, *sub-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum*.

put an end to, I, *prae-cīdo, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsum* (literally, I cut short).

put faith in, I, *fidem tribu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum* (with dat. of person).

put down (this to you), I, (*tibi hoc*) *acceptum rēfēro* (metaphor from book-keeping).

quantity, a, *vis, vim, vi* (f.).

quarrel, a, *iurgium* (n.).

question, a, *quaesti-o, -ōnis* (f.).

question, I, *interrōg-o, -āre*; *percont-or, -ari*; it is questioned or there is a question, *quaeritur*; *ambigitur* (134, b).

radiance, the, *lūm-en, -inis* (n.).

rain, the, *imb-er, -ris* (m.).

raise, I, *toll-o, -ēre, sustūli, sublātum*.

raise the siege, I, *obsidiōnem ōmittō* or *rēlinquo*.

rally, I (trans.), *col-līgo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum*; (intrans.), *mē cōl-ligo*.

rampart, the, *vallum* (n.).

rank, a, *ord-o, -inis* (m.).

rank, the (abstract), *dignit-as, -ātis* (f.).

rate, at a higher, *plūris* (158).

rather, *pōtius*; but rather, *sed potius*.

rather, I would, *mālo, malle, mālui*.

reach, I, *per-vēnio, -venire, -vēni-ventum* (intrans.).

read, I, *lēg-o, -ēre, lēgi, lectum*; I read through, *perlēgo*.

readily, *libenter*.

ready, *pārātus* (sometimes rendered by use of future participle).

really, *rē ipsā*; *re tērā*; *vēre*.

rear, in the, *a tergo*; *post tergum āversus* (adj., 73).

reason, a, *causa* (f.); what reason is there, *quid est causae* (40).

rebellious, *sēditiosus*.

receive, I, *ac-cīpio, -cipere, -cēpi-ceptum*; I receive (a person) *excīpio*,



recent, *rēcen-s, -tis*.

recognise, I, *ag-nosco, -noscere, -nōvi, -nōtum*.

recompense, a, *merc-es, -ēdis* (f.).

record, I, *scrib-o, -ēre, scripsi, scriptum*.

recount, I, *commēmōr-o, -āre*.

recruit, a, *tir-o, -ōnis* (m.).

reduce, I, *rēd-igo, -igēre, -ēgi, -actum*.

reflect, I, *considēr-o, -āre; mēcum cōgit-o, -are*.

refuge with, I take, *con-fūgio, -fugere, -fūgi* (ad with acc.).

refuse, I, *nōlo, nolle, nōlui*.

regain health, I, *convāl-esco, -escere, -ui*.

regard, I (= consider), *hāb-eo, -ēre; iudic-o, -āre; I regard you as a friend, tē pro amīco hābeo*.

regard, I (= look on), *intu-eor, -ēri, -itus*.

reinforcements, *subsidi-a, -ōrum; auxili-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

rejoice, I, *gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīsus* (14).

related, it was, *mēmōriæ prōditum est* (16).

release, I, *solv-o, -ēre, -i, solūtum; liber-o, -are* (both verbs with acc. and abl.).

relieve the city, I, *urbem obsidiōne liberō* (I free the city from blockade).

reluctant, *invītus*.

relying on, *frētus* (196, e).

remain, I, *mān-eo, -ēre, -si, -sum; remāneo*.

remains that, it, *restat* or *rēliqum est ut*.

remark, I (= say), *dic-o, -ēre*.

remember, I, *mēmīn-i, -isse* (perf. with pres. meaning; imperat. *memento*).

remove, I (trans.), *toll-o, -ēre, sustūli, sublātum*.

render, I, *red-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum*.

render assistance, I, *auxilio sum* (40).

repeatedly, *saepissimē; etiam atque etiam*.

repent, I, *me paenit-et, -ēre, -uit* (34).

reply, I, *respond-eo, -ēre, -i, respond-sum; I make no reply, nihīl respond-eo*.

report, I, *nunti-o, -āre; rēnuntio; dē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum* (*hoc tibi defero*).

report, the, *rūm-or, -ōris* (m.).

repose, the, *rēqui-es, -ei* (f.).

request, I make a, *postul-o, -āre* (6 obs.).

rescue, I, *rē-ripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum*.

reserves, the, *subsidi-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

resign, I, *dē-pōno, -ponere, -pōsui, -pōsitum* (trans.); *mē abdūc-o, -āre* (with abl. of thing).

resist, I, *rē-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, -stītum; advers-or, -āri* (both gov. dat.).

resolute, *fortis*.

resolution, *fortitūd-o, -inis* (f.).

resolve, I, *constitu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum; the senate resolve, placet sēnatui*.

respect, the, *hōn-or, -ōris* (m.).

respect, in every, *in omnibus rēbus*.

respectable persons, *bōn-i, -ōrum* (m. pl.).

rest, the, *rēliqu-i, -ōrum* (m. pl.).

restore, I, *restitu-o, -ēre, -i, -tum, rēdintegr-o, -āre*.

restrain, I, *contīn-eo, -ēre, -ui*.

retire, I, *mē rē-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum; pedem rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum*.

retreat, I (see retire).

retrieve the day, I, *proelium rēdintegr-o, -āre*.

return, I (intrans.), *rēd-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum*.

reveal, I, *pātē-fācio, -facere, -fēcī, -factum; to be revealed, pāt-erē, -ui*.

revenue, a, *vectīg-al, -ālis* (n.).

revere, I, *vēnēr-or, -āri*.

revolution, *res nōvæ* (f. pl.).

reward, a, *praemium* (n.).

Rhine, the, *Rhēn-us, -i* (m.).

rich, *div-es, -itis*.

riches, *divitī-ae, -ārum* (f. pl.).

right (adj.), *dext-er*, -*ra*, -*rum*; the right hand, *dextra*.

ring, *a*, *cōrōna* (f.).

ripe, *mātūrus*.

rise, *I*, *surg-o*, -*ēre*, *surrexi*, *surrectum*.

risk, *a*, *pēricūlum* (n.).

river, *a*, *flūm-en*, -*inis* (n.).

road, *a*, *via* (f.); (= approach), *ādīt-us*, -*ūs* (m.).

Roman, *a*, *Rōmānus* (adj. and noun).

Rome, *Rōma* (f.); (when the people are meant), *pōpulus Romanus*; *Romani* (m. pl.).

Romulus, *Rōmūl-us*, -*i* (m.).

route, *a*, *it-er*, -*inēris* (n.).

ruin, the, *exitium* (n.).

ruin, *I*, *per-do*, -*dēre*, -*dīdi*, -*dītum*.

ruined (the state) is, *actum est de (re publicā)*.

rule, *I*, *impēr-o*, -*āre* (gov. dat.).

rumour, *a*, *rūm-or*, -*ōris* (m.).

run up to, *I*, *ac-curro*, -*currēre*, -*cucurri*, -*cursum* (ad with acc.).

rush, *I*, *impētum facio*.

rush is made, *a*, *concurritur* (38).

rush out, *I*, *ē-rumpo*, -*rumpēre*, -*rūpi*, -*rūptum*.

safe (unharmed), *incōlūm-is*, -*e*.

safety, *sāl-us*, -*ūtis* (f.); in safety (= unharmed), *incōlūmis*.

sail, *I*, *nāvīg-o*, -*āre*.

salvation, to be the, *esse sālūti* (40).

same, the, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem* (260).

satisfactorily, *ex sententiā*.

save, *I*, *serv-o*, -*āre*; *conservo*.

saviour, *a*, *conservāt-or*, -*oris* (m.).

say, *I*, *dīc-o*, -*ēre*, *dixi*, *dictum*; *loqu-or*, -*i*, *locūtus*; *inquam* (3); *ai-o* -*ēre* (2, b); *I say not*, *nēg-o*, -*āre* (19).

scarcely, *vix*.

school, *I*, *dōc-eo*, -*ēre*, -*ui*, -*tum*.

scourge, *I*, *verbēr-o*, -*āre*.

scout, *a*, *explōrāt-or*, -*ōris* (m.).

sea, the, *mār-e*, -*is* (n.).

seat, *a*, *sēd-es*, -*is* (f.).

second (adj.), *alt-er*, -*ēra*, -*erum*.

secondly, *deinde*.

second time, *a*, *itērūm*.

secret, in, } *furtim*; *ex occulto*.  
secretly, }

see, *I*, *vīd-eo*, -*ēre*, *vīdī*, *vīsum*; (= understand), *intel-lēgo*, -*lēgere*, -*lēxi*, -*lectum*; (= catch sight of), *con-spīcio*, -*spicēre*, -*spexi*, -*spec-tum*; (= see through), *perspīcio*.

seek, *I*, *pēt-o*, -*ēre*, -*ivi* and -*ii*, -*itum*.

seek to learn, *I*, *quaer-o*, -*ēre*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*.

seem, *I*, *vīd-eor*, -*ēri*, *vīsus*.

seize, *I*, *ar-rīpio*, -*rīpēre*, -*rīpui*, -*reptum*; *I seize* (the hill, or the throne), *occūp-o*, -*āre*.

select, *I*, *ē-līgo*, -*līgēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*; *dēlīgo*.

self-confidence, *sui fidūcia* (239).

self-love, *āmor sui* (239).

sell, *I*, *ven-do*, -*dēre*, -*dīdi*, -*dītum*.

senate, the, *sēnāt-us*, -*ūs* (m.).

senate-house, the, *cūria* (f.).

senators, the, *patr-es*, -*um* (m. pl.).

send, *I*, *mīt-o*, -*ēre*, *mīsi*, *missum*.

send on, *I*, *praemitto*.

serious, *grāvis*.

serve, *I*, *prō-sum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfui* (gov. dat.).

service, *I am of*, *auxilio sum* (40).

service (military), *militia* (f.).

services, *mērīt-a*, -*ōrum* (n. pl.); services to the state, *merita in rem publicam*.

sesterce, *a*, *sesterti-us*, -*i* (m.) (362).

set fire to, *I*, *incen-do*, -*dēre*, -*dī*, -*sum* (gov. acc.).

set forth, *I* (trans.), *ex-pōno*, -*ponēre*, -*pōsui*, -*pōsitum*.

set out, *I*, *prōficisc-or*, -*i*, *profectus*.

settle, *I*, *con-sīdo*, -*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*.

seventh, *septīmus*.

seventy, *septuāgintā* (indecl.).

several (adj.), *āliquot* (indecl.); *non nullus* (258); and see (247).

shameless, *impūden-s*, -*tis*.

shamelessly, *impūdenter*.

shield, *a*, *scūtum* (n.).

shield from, *I*, *dēfen-do*, -*dēre*, -*dī*, -*sum* (a with abl.).

shine, *I* (metaphorical), *ēmīn-eo*, -*ēre*, -*ui*.

ship, *a, nāv-is, -is* (f.).  
 shipwreck, *a, naufrāgium* (n.).  
 shop, *a, tāberna* (f.).  
 short, *brēvis*.  
 shortly, *brēvi*.  
 shoulder, the, *hūmēr-us, -i* (m.).  
 shout, *a, clām-or, -ōris* (m.); a shout  
 is being raised, *conclāmātur* (38).  
 show mercy, *I, mīsēr-eor, -ēri, -ītus*  
 (gov. gen.).  
 show myself, *I, mē prae-sto, -stāre*.  
 shut, *I, clau-do, -dēre, -si, -sum*.  
 Sicily, *Sicīlia* (f.).  
 sick, I am, *aegrōt-o, -āre*.  
 side, the, *lāt-us, -ēris* (n.); on the  
 side, *ā latere*.  
 side, on every, *undīque*.  
 side, on this, *citrā; cis* (both gov.  
 acc.).  
 sides, on all, *undique; passim*.  
 sight, the, *aspect-us, -ūs* (m.).  
 signal, *a, signum* (n.).  
 silence, *a, silentium* (n.).  
 silent, *tācitus* (73).  
 silent, I am, *sil-eo, -ēre, -ui*.  
 silver, *argentum* (n.).  
 sin, *a, peccātum* (n.).  
 single, *ūnus*.  
 sister, *a, sōr-or, -ōris* (f.).  
 sit, I, *sēd-eo, -ēre, sēdi, ses-*  
 sit down, I, *sum*.  
 six, *sex*.  
 six hundredth, *sescentēsīmus*.  
 sixteenth, *sextus dēcīmus*.  
 sixth, *sextus*.  
 sixty, *sexagīntā*.  
 size, of what, *quantus*.  
 slave, *a, serv-us, -i* (m.).  
 slavery, *servit-us, -ūtis* (f.).  
 slay, *I, inter-ficio, -ficēre, -feci, -fec-*  
*tum; oc-cīdo, -cidēre, -cidī, -cisum;*  
*inter-īmo, -imēre, -ēmi, -emptum*.  
 sleep, *a, somn-us, -i* (m.).  
 small, *parvus*.  
 small-minded, *parvi ānīmi* (144).  
 snatch forth, *I, ē-ripiō, -ripēre, -ripui,*  
*-reptum*.  
 snatch from, *I, ēripiō* (31).  
 so, *ita; tam* (with adj. and adv.);  
*ādeo* (with verbs); (= therefore),  
*itaque*.

so great, *tantus*.  
 so little, *tantūlus*.  
 so long, *tamdiu*.  
 so long as, *dummōdō* (279).  
 so many, *tot* (111).  
 so much as, *tantus quantus*.  
 so far distant is it that (92).  
 soil, the, *sōlum* (n.); *terra* (f.).  
 solace, *a, sōlācium* (n.); to be a  
 solace, *esse sōlācio* (40).  
 soldier, *a, mil-es, -itis* (m.).  
 solitude, *sōlītūd-o, -inis* (f.).  
 solvent, to be, *esse solvendo* (221).  
 some, *nonnulli* (m. pl.); some . . .  
 others, *alii . . . alii*.  
 somebody or other, *nescio quis* (255).  
 someone, *āliquis* (253); *quispiam*  
 (254); *nescio quis* (255); *quidam*  
 (256).  
 some . . . others, *alii . . . alii*  
 (116); *pars . . . pars*.  
 sometimes, *interdum; nonnun-*  
*quam*.  
 somewhat, *nescio quid* (used ad-  
 verbially).  
 son, *a, fili-us, -i* (m.) (voc. *fīlī*).  
 soon, *mox; iam; brēvi; brēvi tem-*  
*pore; as soon as possible, quam*  
*celerrīme*.  
 sorry, I am, *me paenitet* (34).  
 sort, of what, *quālis*.  
 sortie, *a, ērupti-o, -ōnis* (f.).  
 source of pleasure, to be a, *esse*  
*vōluptāti* (40).  
 sovereign, *a, rex, rēgis* (m.).  
 span, *a, curricūlum* (n.) (lit., course).  
 spare, *I, parc-o, -ēre, pēperci; tem-*  
*pēr-o, -āre* (both gov. dat.).  
 speak, *I, dīc-o, -ēre, dixi, dictum;*  
*lōqu-or, -i, locūtus*.  
 spear, *a, hasta* (f.).  
 speech, *a, ōrāti-o, -ōnis* (f.).  
 speed, the, *cēlērīt-as, -ātis* (f.).  
 spend on, *I, im-pendo, -pendēre,*  
*-pendi* (with acc. and dat.).  
 spent (= passed), *actus* (particip.).  
 spirit, the, *ānīm-ī, -ōrum* (m. pl.).  
 spite of, in (42, d); in spite of your  
 eloquence = you a most eloquent  
 man.  
 spot, the, *lōc-us, -i* (m.).

spring, the, *ver*, *vērīs* (n.).  
spring from, *I*, *ōr-ior*, *-īri*, *ortus* (184).

spur, *a*, *calc-ar*, *-āris* (n.).

spy, *a*, *spēcūlāt-or*, *-ōris* (m.); *explōrāt-or*, *-ōris* (m.).

stage, the, *scaena* (f.); on the stage, *in scaenā*.

stake, to be at, *āgi*; our glory is at stake, *glōria nostra agitur*.

stand by, *I*, *ad-sto*, *-stāre*, *-stīti*.

stand for (an office), *I*, *pēt-o*, *-ēre*, *-īvi*, *-itum*.

stand round, *I*, *circum-sto*, *-stāre*, *-stīti*.

start, *I*, *prōficisc-or*, *-i*, *profectus*.

starve, *I*, *fāme pēr-eo*, *-īre*, *-īi*, *-itum* (lit., *I* perish from hunger).

state, *a* (= country), *res publica* (f.); *civīl-as*, *-ātis* (f.).

statesman, *a*, *is qui ad rem publicam se contulit*; *auctor consilii publici*.

stay, *I*, *commōr-or*, *-āri*.

stealthily, *furtim*.

still (= even now), *etiam nunc*.

still (= nevertheless), *tāmen*.

stimulate, *I*, *excit-o*, *-āre*.

Stoic, *a*, *Stōic-us*, *-i* (m.).

strength, *rōb-ur*, *-ōris* (n.); *vīr-es*, *-um* (f. pl.).

strive, *I*, *nīt-or*, *-i*, *nīsus* and *nixus*.

strong enough to, *I* am, *vāl-eo*, *-ēre*, *-ui* (ad with gerund or gerundive).

stubbornly, *ācriter*.

study, *I*, *stūd-eo*, *-ēre*, *-ui* (gov. dat.).

study, the, *cognit-i-o*, *-ōnis* (f.).

subject, *I* am, *serv-io*, *-īre* (with dat.).

succeed, *I*, *prospērē rem gēro*.

succeed, *I* (of kings), (*regnum*) *ex-cipio*.

successfully, *fēliciter*.

such (= so great), *tantus*; (= of such a kind), *tālis*; (= of that sort), *eiusmodi*; such as, *tantus quantus*; *tālis quālis*.

suddenly, *sūbito*; *imprōvīso*.

sue for, *I*, *pēt-o*, *-ēre*, *-īvi*, *-itum*.

suffer, *I*, *pāt-ior*, *-i*, *passus*; *perpētior*.

sufficient, *sātis* (149).

sum of money, *a*, *pēcūnia* (f.).

summer, the, *aest-as*, *-ātis* (f.).

sun, the, *sol*, *sōlis*; at sunrise, *sole orto*.

sunset, at, *sōlis occāsu*.

superior, *sūpērior*.

superior to, *I* am, *prae-sto*, *-stāre*, *-stīti* (with dat.).

superior numbers, *multitūd-o*, *-inis* (f.).

supporters, your, = those who favour you.

surely, *prōfecto*.

surrender, *a*, *dēdīt-i-o*, *-ōnis* (f.).

surrender, *I* (trans.), *dē-do*, *-dēre*, *-dīdī*, *-dītum*; *trādo*; (intrans.), *me dēdo*.

surround, *I* (trans.), *cīng-o*, *-ēre*, *cīnci*, *cīnctum*; *circum-vēnīo*, *-venīre*, *-vēnī*, *-ventum*; (*I* surround as with a hedge), *saep-io*, *-īre*, *-si*, *-tum*.

swear, *I*, *iūr-o*, *-āre* (13); having sworn, *iurātus*.

swollen, *auctus* (particip. of *augeo*).

sword, *glādi-us*, *-i* (m.); (if not meant literally), *ferrum* (n.).

sword-in-hand, *cum glādio* (190).

Syracusans, the, *Sŷrācūsān-i*, *-ōrum* (m. pl.).

Syracuse, *Sŷrācūs-ae*, *-ārum* (f. pl.).

take, *I*, *cāp-io*, *-ēre*, *cēpi*, *captum*.

take (an instance), *I*, *ūt-or*, *-i*, *ūsus* (gov. abl.).

take care lest, *I* { *cāv-eo*, *-ēre*,  
take care that not, *I* { *cāvī*, *cautum*  
ne.

take care that, *I*, *cūr-o*, *-āre ut*.

take in, *I*, *ac-cipio*, *-cipēre*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*.

take in hand, *I*, *sus-cipio*, *-cipēre*.

take my stand, *I*, *con-sisto*, *-sistēre*, *-stīti*.

take off, *I* (clothing), *pōn-o*, *-ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*.

take part, *I*, *vers-or*, *-āri*; *I* take part in politics, *in re publica versor*.

take pity on, *I*, *mīsēr-eor*, *-ēri*, *-itus* (gov. gen.).

take to flight, *I*, *tergum vert-o*, *-ēre*, *-i*, *versum* (lit., *I* turn my back).

take up (arms), *I*, *cāp-io*, *-ēre*, *cēpi*, *captum*; *sūm-o*, *-ēre*, *psī*, *-ptum*.

take up a position, *I, con-sisto, -sis-tēre, -stīti.*

take (your) side, *I, (a te) sto, stāre, stēti, stātum.*

task, *a, ōp-us, -ēris (n.).*

teach, *I, doc-eo, -ēre, -ui, -tum (6).*

tear, *a, lacrima (f.).*

tear down, *I, scind-o, -ēre, scīdi, scissum.*

tedious, *longus.*

tell, *I, dic-o, -ēre, dixi, dictum; I tell a tale, narr-o, -āre; (= I announce), nunti-o, -āre.*

temple, *a, templum (n.).*

temptation, *a, illēcēbra (f.).*

ten, *dēcem.*

terrify, *I, perterr-eo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.*

territory, *fin-es, -ium (m.); agr-i, -ōrum (m.).*

terror, *terr-or, -ōris (m.).*

test, *a, iudicium (n.).*

test, *I, exper-ior, -īri, -tus.*

than, *quam* (and see 332).

that (demonstr.), *il-le, -la, -lud; is, ea, id; those who, ei qui (231);*

that (of yours), *is-te, -ta, -tud;*

that fellow, *iste hōmo (236).*

that (= in order that), *ut; quo (63).*

Theban, *a, Thēbān-us, -ī (m.).*

their, *eōrum; suus (237).*

then (= at that time), *tum; tunc; (= secondly), deinde; (= therefore), igitur.*

there (= thither), *eo; illuc.*

therefore, *igitur* (stands second in sentence); and therefore, *quam ob rem; quōcircā.*

thereupon, *deinde; tum; quo facto* (abl. abs.) (literally, which having been done).

they (228).

thick, *densus.*

thing, *a, res, rēi (f.).*

think, *I, pūt-o, -āre; existim-o, -āre; arbitr-or, -āri; (= I feel), sent-iō, -īre, sensi, sensum; (= I ponder), cōgit-o, -āre; thinking, rātus* (particip. of *reor*); *I think lightly of, parvī fācio (158); I think it fair, aequum cens-eo, -ēre.*

third, *tertius; one-third, tertia pars.*

thirty-eight, *duo dē quadrāgintā.*

this, *hic, haec, hoc; hicce.*

thither, *eo; illuc.*

thousand, *a, mille (290).*

thousand times, *a (291).*

threats, the, *min-ae, -ārum (f. pl.).*

threaten, *I, min-or, -āri (13); (metaphorically), immīn-eo, -ēre; im-pend-eo, -ēre* (both intrans. but may have an indirect object in dat.).

threatening (adj.), *min-ax, -ācis.*

three, *trēs, tria.*

three apiece, *trīni; terni (295, 296).*

three per cent., *ūsurae quadrantes (366).*

three-days, *trīdium (n.).*

throne, the, *dōmināt-us, -ūs (m.); regnum (n.).*

through, *per* (gov. acc.).

throughout, = in the whole of.

throw down, *I, prō-icio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum.*

throw open, *I, pātē-fācio, -facēre, -fēcī, -factum.*

tie, *a, vinculum (n.).*

Tigranes, *Tigrān-es, -is (m.).*

time, the, *temp-us, -ōris (n.); at that time, eā tempestāte.*

time, for some, *aliquantum tempōris.*

toil, *a, lāb-or, -ōris (m.).*

tongue, the, *lingua (f.).*

too (= also), *quōque.*

top of, the (76).

torture, the, *crūciāt-us, -ūs (m.).*

towards, *ad* (gov. acc.).

town, *a, oppidum (n.).*

townspeople, *oppidān-i, -ōrum (m. pl.).*

train, *I, exerc-eo, -ēre, -ui.*

travel, *I, iter fācio.*

traveller, *a, viāt-or, -ōris (m.).*

treacherous, *perfidus.*

treachery, *prōditi-o, -ōnis (f.).*

treat, *I, af-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum.*

tree, *a, arb-or, -ōris (f.).*

trench, *a, fossa (f.).*

troublesome, *mōlestus.*

true, *verus.*

trust, *I, fidem hāb-eo, -ēre; con-fido, -fidere, -fīsus* (both have dat. of indirect obj.).



truth, the (when concrete), *vēr-a*,  
-ōrum (n. pl.); (when abstract),  
*vērīt-as*, -ātis (f.).

tunic, *a*, *tūnica* (f.).

turn, *I* (trans.), *vert-o*, -ēre, -i, *ver-*  
*sum*; (intrans.), *vertor*; *mē verto*;  
*convertor*.

turn out, *I* (intrans.), *cēd-o*, -ēre,  
*cessi*, *cessum*.

Tusculum, *Tuscūlum* (n.) (a town).

twenty, *viginti*.

twice, *bis*.

two, *duo*.

two apiece, *bīn-i*, -ae, -a (295).

two-days, *bīdūum* (n.).

two hundred apiece, *dūcēn-i*, -ae,  
-a.

two thirds, *duae partes* (299).

tyrant, *a*, *tīrann-us*, -i (m.).

unaccustomed, *insuētus* (148).

unarmed, *inerm-is*, -e.

unasked, *ultro* (adv.).

unawares, *ex imprōviso*.

uncle, *an*, *āvuncūl-us*, -i (m.).

undergo, *I*, *vēnio in* (with acc.);  
*sūb-eo*, -īre, -iī, -itum.

understand, *I*, *intel-lēgo*, -legēre,  
-lexi, -lectum.

undertake, *I*, *sus-cīpio*, -cīpēre, -cēpi,  
-ceptum.

undying, *sempiternus*.

unfit for, *im-par*, -pāris (with dat.).

ungrateful (to), *ingrātus* (in with  
acc.).

unhappy, *mīs-er*, -ēra, -ērūm.

unheard, *inaudītus*.

universally (see agreed, it is).

unjustly, *iniuriā*; *per iniuriām*.

unless, *nisi*.

unlike, *dissimilis*.

unripe, *crūdus*.

until, *priusquam* (278).

unusual, *insōlītus*.

unwilling, *I am*, *nōlo*, *nolle*, *nōlui*.

unworthy, *indignus* (196).

upon, *in* (gov. acc.); *sūper* (gov.  
acc.).

upper, *sūperior*.

upright, *intēg-er*, -ra, -rum.

uprightness, *integrīt-as*, -ātis (f.).

urge, *I*, *suād-eo*, -ēre, *suasi*, *suasum*  
(gov. dat.).

urge on, *I*, *incīt-o*, -āre.

use, *I*, *ūt-or*, -i, *ūsus* (gov. abl.).

use, to be of, *ūsui esse* (40).

use of, *I make*, *ūt-or*, -i, *usus* (gov.  
abl.).

usefulness, *ūtīlīt-as*, -ātis (f.).

usual (with their), *prō* (gov. abl.);

e.g., with your usual wisdom, *prō*  
*tuā sapiētiā* (lit., in proportion to  
your wisdom).

utmost, *summus*.

Valerius, *Vālēr-i-us*, -i (m.).

valour, *virt-us*, -ūtis (f.).

value, *I*, *aestim-o*, -āre; *I value so*  
highly, *tanti faciō* (158).

vary, *I*, *vāri-o*, -āre.

Veii, *Vēi-i*, -orum (m. pl.) (a town).

vengeance on, *I wreak*, *saev-io*, -īre,  
-iī, -itum (on = in with acc.).

vent, *I*, *ef-fundo*, -fundēre, -fūdi,  
-fūsum; *evōm-o*, -ēre, -ui.

venture, *I*, *aud-eo*, -ēre, *ausus*; *I*  
venture on these enterprises, *haec*  
*audeo*.

Vercingetorix, *Vercingetor-ix*, -igis  
(m.).

verdict, *a*, *iūdicium* (n.).

veterans, the, *sēniōr-es*, -um (m.  
pl.).

victorious, *vict-or*, -ōris.

victory, *a*, *victōria* (f.).

view, *I have in*, *spect-o*, -āre (gov.  
acc.).

vigorously, *acrīter*.

village, *a*, *vic-us*, -i (m.).

vine, *a*, *vit-is*, -is (f.).

vineyard, *a*, *vīnea* (f.).

violate, *I*, *viol-o*, -āre.

violent hands, *vis ac manus* (Hen-  
diadys; two nouns coupled to-  
gether, but expressing one idea;  
cf. the breath of life, *vīta ac*  
*spīritus*).

virtue, *virt-us*, -ūtis (f.).

virtuous, *sanctus*; *bōnus*.

visit, *I*, *vīs-o*, -ēre, -i; *ād-eo*, -īre,  
-iī, -itum.

voice, *a*, *vox*, *vōcis* (f.).



vote, a, *sententia* (f.).

vote for, I, *cens-eo, -ēre, -ui, -um* (with gerundive construction in acc. as object).

wage (war), I, (*bellum*) *in-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, illātum* (with dat. of indirect object); (*bellum*) *gēr-o, -ēre, gessi, gestum* (in or 'contra. with acc.).

wait, I, *mōr-or, -āri; expect-o, -āre.*

wait for, I, *expect-o, -āre* (gov. acc.).

walk, I, *ambūl-o, -āre.*

wall, a, *mūr-us, -i* (m.).

walls (of a city), *moen-ia, -ium* (n. pl.).

war, a, *bellum* (n.).

war is over, the, } *dēbellātum est*  
war is brought to } (38).  
a close,

warfare, *res militāris.*

warn, I, *mōn-eo, -ēre; admoneo* (167, 174).

wasted, I am, *pēr-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum.*

waste time, I, *tempus tēr-o, -ēre, trīvi, trītum.*

watch, I keep, *vīgīl-o, -āre.*

waver, I, *lāb-o, -āre.*

way, the, *via* (f.).

way, in such a, *ita.*

we, *nos* (gen. *nostrum* when participative, *nostri* when objective).

wealth, *dīvīti-ae, -ārum* (f. pl.); *ōp-es, -um* (f. pl.).

wealthy, *ōpūlentus.*

weary, *fessus; dēfessus.*

weary, I am, *me taedet* (34).

weight (metaphorical), *auctōrit-as, -ātis* (f.).

welfare, the, *sāl-us, -ūtis* (f.).

well, *bēnē.*

well, I am, *vāl-eo, -ēre, -ui.*

what (interrog. adj.), *qui, quae, quod.*

whatever, *quidquid.*

wheel round, I, *signa vert-o, -ere, -i, versum* (lit., turn the standards).

when, *ūbi* (with indic.); *cum* (with subjunct.) (270).

when (interrogative), *quando.*

whence, *unde.*

whenever, *quōties; quotiescumque.*

where, *ūbi; (= whither), quo.*

wherever, *ūbicumque.*

whether, *num; -nē; whether not, nonnē; whether . . . or, utrum . . . an; nē . . . an* (126 and 135); *sive . . . sive* (137).

which of the two, *ūt-er, -ra, -rum.*

while, *dum* (274 and 277).

white, *albus.*

who (interrog.), *quis, quid.*

who (relative), which, that, *qui, quae, quod.*

whoever, *quisquis; quicumque.*

whole, *tōtus.*

whose = of whom.

why, *cur; quāre* (in indirect questions).

wide, *lātus.*

wife, a, *ux-or, -ōris* (f.); *con-iunx, -iugis* (f.).

will, a, *testāmentum* (n.).

will, against (my), *me invīto* (abl. abs.).

willing, I am, *vōlo, velle, volui.*

willingly, *libenter.*

win, I, *pār-io, -ēre, pēpēri, partum.*

wing (of an army), *corn-u, -ūs* (n.).

winter quarters, *hibern-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).

wisdom, *sāpientia* (f.).

wise, *sāpien-s, -tis.*

wisely, *sāpienter.*

wish, the, *vōlunt-as, -ātis* (f.); against the wishes of gods and men, *dīs hōminibusque invītis* (abl. abs.).

wish, I do not, *nōlo, nolle, nōlui.*

wish, I, *vōlo, velle, vōlui.*

with, *cum* (gov. abl.) (190); along

with me, *mēcum; with me (= in my house), apud mē.*

withdraw, I (trans.), *sub-dūco, -ducēre, -duxi, -ductum; rē-mōveo, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum.*

within (prep.), *intrā* (gov. acc.).

within (adv.), *intus.*

without, *sine* (gov. abl.); without (dragging), see (90).

without a break, *continenter.*

woman, a, *mūli-er, -ēris* (f.).

- wonder, the, *admīrāti-o, -ōnis* (f.);  
it excites wonder, *admirationem*  
*mōvet* (or) *fācit*.  
wonder, I, *mīr-or, -āri*.  
wonderful, *mīr-us*.  
wont, I am, *sōl-eo, -ēre, sōlitus*.  
wood (timber), *mātēria* (f.).  
world, in the, *gentium, terrārum*  
(partitive gen., 152).  
worth-living, *vītāl-is, -e*.  
worthless, *nēquissimus*.  
worthy, *dignus* (196); (= excellent),  
*optīmus*.  
would that, *ūtīnam* (164).  
wound, a, *vuln-us, -ēris* (n.).  
wrest, I, *ex-torqueo, -torquēre, -torsi,*  
*-tortum* (31).  
write, I, *scrīb-o, -ēre, scripsi, scrip-*  
*tum*.  
writer, a, *script-or, -ōris* (m.).  
writings, the, *script-a, -ōrum* (n. pl.).  
year, a, *ann-us, -i* (m.).  
yesterday, *hēri*.  
yet (= nevertheless), *tāmen; vērō;*  
and yet, *quamquam* (286).  
yield, I (= surrender), *mē dē-do,*  
*-dēre, -dēdi, -ditum; in dēditiōnem*  
*vēn-io, -īre, vēni, ventum*.  
yield, I (= give way), *cēd-o, -ēre,*  
*cessi, cessum*.  
you, *tu* (sing.); *vos* (plur.).  
young, *tēn-er, -ēra, -ērum*.  
young man, a, *ādūlescen-s, -tis* (m.).  
your, *tuus; vest-er, -ra, -rum*.  
youth, *ādūlescentia*.  
youth, a, *ādūlescen-s, -tis* (m.);  
*iūven-is, -is* (m.).

## INDEX.

References are to paragraphs, except when otherwise stated.

- Abhinc*, 201.  
 Ablative absolute, 53-56.  
 Ablative of Accompaniment, 190.  
   — Agent, 191.  
   — Comparison, 185.  
   — Definite Price, 194.  
   — Manner, 187.  
   — Means, 189.  
   — Measure, 192.  
   — Origin, 184.  
   — Quality, 186.  
   — Respect, 188.  
   — Road by which, 210.  
   — Separation, 183.  
   — Time, 197-199.  
 Accusative and Infinitive, 1, 2.  
   — Cognate, 11.  
   — Exclamatory, 12.  
   — of Extent of Space, 11, 202.  
   — of Extent of Time, 11, 200.  
   — Limiting verb, 11.  
 Adjectives, agreement of, 77-80.  
   — representing English adjective phrase, 72.  
   — with Relative, 103.  
   — used adverbially, 73.  
   — used substantivally, 81, 82.  
 Adjective used for partitive substantive, 76.  
*aiunt* (page 7).  
*aliquis*, 253.  
*alius ac*, 115.  
*alius . . . alius*, 116, 117.  
*alter*, 118.  
*amplius*, 202, 334.  
*an*, 126, 127, 135.  
 Antecedent, position of, 98, 105.  
*Antequam*, 274, 275, 278.  
 Apposition, 42, 43.  
 Causal clauses, 305-311.  
*caveo*, 172.  
*ceteri*, 261.  
 Commands, direct, 160-163.  
   — indirect, 167-173.  
 Comparative clauses in Indic., 337-339.  
   — — — Subjunct., 342.  
 Comparison, 332-336.  
 Compounds of *sum*, 32.  
 Concessive clauses, 280-287.  
 Conditional clauses, when consecutive, 331.  
   — — in Indic., 314, 315.  
   — — in indirect Statement, 320-323.  
   — — irregularities in, 326-328.  
   — — Subjunctive, 316, 317.  
 Conjunctions, co-ordinating, 355.  
   — subordinating, 356.  
*conor*, 163.  
*constat*, 16.  
*consulo*, 30.  
 Correlatives, 109-113, 116-119.  
*cum* causal, 270, 271, 306.  
   — concessive, 272.  
   — with Indic., 266-269.  
   — as preposition, 190.  
   — . . . *tum*, 273.  
*curo*, 227.  
 Date, day, 303, 304.  
   — month, 302.  
   — year, 301.

Dative after Adjectives, 33.

— — Adverbs, 33.

— as indirect Object, 26.

— of Person interested, 41.

— predicative, 40.

— after Verbs, 27, 31.

*debeo*, 24.

*decet*, 35.

*dedecet*, 35.

*dignor*, 196.

*dignus*, 196.

*donec*, 274.

*dubito*, 93, 94.

*dum*, 274, 277, 278, 279.

*dummodo*, 279.

*ecquis*, 121.

*est qui*, 87, 88.

*etsi*, 283.

*faveo*, 27.

Fractions, of *as*, 365-367.

— in Latin, 299.

*fretus*, 196.

*fruo*, 196.

*fungor*, 196.

*gaudeo*, 14.

Genitive after adjectives, 148, 156.

— of Charge, 153.

— of Definition, 143.

— Elliptic, 146.

— Objective, 147.

— Partitive, 149, 151, 152.

— Possessive, 145.

— of Quality, 144.

— of Value, 158-159.

Gerund, 218-223, 225.

Gerundive construction, 224, 226, 227.

— of Necessity, 213, 214.

*glorior*, 196.

*hic*, 233, 236.

*idcirco*, 60.

*idem*, 260.

*idem ac*, 114.

*ideo*, 60.

*id quod*, 102.

*Idus*, 303.

*ille*, 233-235.

*impero*, 27, 28, 167.

Impersonals, 34-37.

Impersonal passive, 38-39.

Indicative as Potential, 330.

*indignus*, 196.

*indulgeo*, 27.

Infinitive, tenses of, 4.

— historic, 25.

— substantival, 20-23.

*inquam*, 3.

*Interest*, 37, 138, 159.

Interest, rate of, 366.

*inter se*, 240.

*invideo*, 27.

*ipse*, 245, 246.

*is*, 231, 232.

*iste*, 233, 236.

*iubeo*, 168.

*Kalendae*, 303.

*libet*, 36.

*licet*, 36, 170.

*malo*, 24.

*metus*, 70.

*minus*, 202, 334.

*miseret*, 34.

Modal verb, 24.

*modo*, 279.

*moneo*, 167, 174.

*multus*, 79, 80.

*muto*, 194.

*ne*, 61, 66, 167.

*nē*, 120, 126, 129.

*necesse*, 170, 215.

Necessity, Ch. XXIX.

*nego*, 19.

*nemo*, 258.

*nescio an*, 132.

— *quis*, 133, 255.

— *quomodo*, 133.

*neve* or *neu*, 67, 162, 169.

*nisi*, 318.

*nolo*, 24.

*Nonae*, 303.

*nonne*, 120, 129.

*non quo*, 311.

*nullus*, 258.

- num*, 120, 129.  
 Number, indefinitely large, 291.  
   — very small, 292.  
 Numeral, adverbs, 298.  
   — cardinal, 288-290.  
   — distributive, 295-297.  
   — order of, 300.  
   — ordinal, 293, 294.  
*nuntiaturum est*, 16.  
 Obligation, Ch. XXIX.  
*oportet*, 170, 212.  
*Oratio obliqua*, Chs. XLVII., XLVIII.,  
   L.  
   — commands in, 357.  
   — prohibitions in, 358.  
   — questions in, 359-361.  
   — subordinate clauses in, 353.  
   — indicative in, 369.  
 Order of clauses, Appendix II., p.  
   (184).  
   -- of words, Appendix II., p. (186).  
*paenitet*, 34.  
*parco*, 27.  
*pareo*, 27.  
 Participles, future, 48.  
   — perfect, 50-52.  
   — present, 45-47.  
*persuadeo*, 27, 29, 167, 174.  
*piget*, 34.  
 Place, whence, 207.  
   — where, 203-206.  
   — whither, 208.  
*placeo*, 27.  
*plus*, 202, 334.  
*postquam*, 263.  
*postridie quam*, 274.  
*potior*, 196.  
 Prepositions, Appendix I., p. (181).  
*pridie*, 304.  
*pridie quam*, 274.  
*primus*, 74.  
*priusquam*, 274, 275, 278.  
 Pronouns, demonstrative, 231-236.  
   — indefinite, 249-257.  
   — personal, 228-230.  
*pudet*, 34.  
*qualis*, 109, 110, 123, 130.  
*quam*, joining two comparatives, 335.  
*quam*, with superlatives, 338.  
*quamquam*, 281, 286.  
*quamvis*, 282, 287.  
*quando*, 124.  
*quantus*, 109, 123, 130.  
*quasi*, 257, 344.  
 Questions, alternative, 126.  
   — direct, 120-127.  
   — indirect, 128-132.  
*qui*, adverb, 108.  
   — concessive, 285.  
   — consecutive, 86, 87.  
   — final, 62.  
*quia*, 305, 308.  
*quicumque*, 252.  
*quidam*, 256, 257.  
*quilibet*, 251.  
*quin*, 93, 95, 96.  
*quis*, indefinite, 250.  
   — interrogative, 121, 130.  
*quispiam*, 254.  
*quisquam*, 249.  
*quisque*, 247, 248.  
*quisquis*, 252.  
*quivis*, 251.  
*quo*, with comparatives, 63.  
   — (= whither), 113, 124, 152.  
*quoad*, 274, 278.  
*quod*, 305, 308, 309, 311.  
*quod*, substantival, 312.  
*quodsi*, 324.  
*quominus*, 97.  
*quoniam*, 305.  
*quodque*, 248.  
*quot*, 109, 123, 130.  
*quoties*, 113, 124, 265.  
*refert*, 37, 159.  
 Relative clause in Indic., 65, 88, 140.  
   — — in Subjunct., 18, 62, 86, 87.  
     139, 173, 307, 310, 353.  
 Relative pronoun, agreement of, 98.  
   101.  
   — — as co-ordinate link, 106, 368.  
   — — position of, 98 obs., 104, 107.  
*reliqui*, 261.  
*se*, 5, 237, 239-243.  
*sestertium*, 363, 364.  
*sestertius*, 362.  
*si minus*, 325.

*si non*, 318, 325.

*simul ac*, 263.

*simulo*, 15.

*sin*, 325.

*sive*, 137.

Subjunctive, consecutive, 83-88, 90-97.

— deliberative, 125.

— final, 58-64, 66-68.

— of indirect command, 167, 169-172.

— potential, 329.

— in relative clause, 18, 62, 173, 353.

*sunt qui*, 87.

Supine in *-u*, 177.

— in *-um*, 175, 176.

*suus*, 237, 239-243.

*taedet*, 34.

*talis*, 109.

*tametsi*, 283.

*tamquam*, 342, 344.

*tantum abest*, 92.

*tantus*, 109-111.

*tot*, 109, 111.

Temporal clauses, 262-271.

Tense future-perfect in postpone-ment, 165.

— historic present, 180.

— idiomatic use of future, 181.

— — — imperfect, 179.

— — — present, 178.

— sequence in indirect questions, 131.

— sequence in consecutive clauses, 84.

Tense sequence in oratio obliqua, 370.  
— sequence in final clause, 59.

*ubi*, 113, 263.

*ullus*, 249.

*ultimus*, 74.

*ut* concessive, 284.

— consecutive, 83.

— final, 58.

— with Indic., 89, 263, 339.

— interrogative, 141.

— *non*, 85.

— omitted, 170.

— restrictive, 90, 340, 341.

— substantival, 91, 92.

*uter*, 134, 259.

*uterque*, 259.

*utor*, 196.

*utrum*, 126, 136.

*velut*, 342, 343.

Verbal noun in *-ing*, 345.

Verbs of asking, teaching, etc., 6, 7.

— accusing, 153, 154.

— compounded with *trans*, 10.

— denoting abundance, 195.

— factitive, 8, 9.

— of fearing, 69.

— of pitying, 157.

— of promising, hoping, etc., 13.

— of remembering, etc., 157.

*vereor*, 69.

*vescor*, 196.

*visum est*, 16.

*volo*, 24.

Wishes, 164.













